

STANDARD EQUIPMENT FOR BASE MACHINE

Engine and related items

- Air cleaner, dry, double element type with caution lamp on monitor
- Decelerator pedal
- Engine, KOMATSU SAA4D107E-1, net output of **79 kW** 105 HP direct injection, turbocharged, air-to-air aftercooler, EPA Tier 3 emissions certified
- Fan, hydraulic driven, electronic control
- Fuel pre-filter (10 micron) and fuel filter (2 micron)
- Intake pipe with precleaner
- Radiator mask grid
- Radiator reserve tank
- Ribbon heater
- Water separator

Electric system

- Alternator, 35 amp (24 V)
- Back-up alarm
- Batteries, large capacity 92 Ah
- Starting motor, 5.5 kW

Power train and controls

- Brake pedal
- Counter rotation
- Electronically controlled Hydrostatic Transmission (HST) with Quick-shift and variable speed settings
- Palm Command Control System (PCCS) with electronic control for travel control
- Reverse speed presets

Undercarriage

- Idler cushions
- Sprockets, bolt-on
- Track roller guards, end section
- Track shoe assembly w/sealed and lubricated link assembly:
- -- D39EX-22: 460 mm 18.1" single grouser shoes
- -D39PX-22: **635 mm** 25.0" single grouser shoes

Guards and covers

- Crankcase guard and underguard
- Engine hood and side panels
- ROPS/FOPS*
- Sprocket inner guard

Operator environment

- Cup holder
- Electronic monitor panel with on-board diagnostics
- Foot rest, high mounted
- Seat belt, 76 mm 3" retractable
- Seat, low back vinyl, suspension type

Dozer assembly

 Variable pitch and power angle tilt dozer assembly, inside arms (EX: 2710 mm 8'11" blade, PX: 3250 mm 10'8" blade)

Hydraulics and controls

- Accumulator for Proportional Pressure Control (PPC)
- Hvdraulics for PAT dozer
- Palm Command Control System (PCCS) with Proportional Pressure Control (PPC) for blade control

Vandalism protection

- Filler cap locks and cover locks
- Instrument panel lock and cover (canopy only)

Other standard equipment

- Grease gun holder
- High altitude arrangement (no fuel adjustment up to 2300 m 7,546 ft)
- Lighting package (3 front, 1 rear cab/canopy)
- Marks and plates, English
- Pullhook, front

*ROPS cab or ROPS canopy must be ordered for all machines. Cab and canopy FOPS Level 2. ROPS/FOPS meets all OSHA/MSHA standards and regulations criteria

Dozer assembly and rear-mounted equipment are not included in base machine price.



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

Track shoe assembly with sealed and lubricated link assembly

• D39PX-22

- **700 mm** 27.6" single grouser, link Track rail assembly with Abrasion Resistant (AR) bushings and sealed and lubricated link assembly

- D39EX-22
- 460 mm 18.1" single grouser, shoe with AR link
- 510 mm 20" single grouser, with AR link
- D39PX-22
- 635 mm 25.0" single grouser, with AR link
- 700 mm 27.6" single grouser, with AR link

Dozer assembly

- D39PX-22 2980 mm 9'9" blade Track roller guards
- Track roller guards, segmented, full length

Operator environment

- 12 amp (12V) power port (cab only)
- Cab machine
- Cigarette lighter (24 V, standard for cab) Lunch box holder (standard for cab)
- Provision for radio (cab only)
- Seat, suspension type, fabric, high back
- Seat, suspension type, fabric low back - Seat, air suspension type, fabric high
- Lunch box holder (option for canopy)

Rear equipment and hydraulics • Rear, hydraulics (D39EX/PX-22)

- Ripper, multi-shank (D39EX-22 only)

ROPS canopy and ROPS cab equipment

- ROPS cab (includes air conditioner with heater, defroster, pressurizer)
- Optional radio, AM/FM, cassette ROPS canopy with lower heater

Operator environment

Forestry guards for cab and canopy

www.Komatsu.com

CEN00321-00

Printed in Japan 200803 IP.AD (10)



Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. **KOMATSU** is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan. **NET HORSEPOWER**

79 kW 105 HP @ 2200 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

D39EX-22: **9040 kg** 19,930 lb D39PX-22: **9480 kg** 20,900 lb

KOMATSU®

D39EX-22

D39PX-22



HOMATSE

Photo may include optional equipment.

D39-22 Crawler Dozer CRAWLER DOZER

WALK-AROUND

NET HORSEPOWER 79 kW 105 HP @ 2200 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

D39EX-22: **9040 kg** 19,930 lb D39PX-22: **9480 kg** 20,900 lb

All-around visibility

- Super-slant nose design
- Cab-forward design
- Integrated ROPS/FOPS

Increased productivity

- Highest HP in its class
- Electronically-controlled hydraulically-driven fan
- In-shoe final drive
- High capacity Pitch- Adjustable Power-Angle-Tilt dozer blade

Easy operation/Increased operator comfort

- Hydrostatic Transmission (HST) with electronic control
- Palm Command Control System (PCCS)
- Large and quiet pressurized cab (optional)
- New cab damper mounting system (for cab)

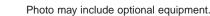
Improved durability

- Heavy-plate steel used throughout
- Modular design

Easy maintenance

- Electronic monitor panel with on-board diagnostics
- Rear-mount radiator with swing-up hydraulicallydriven fan







OPERATOR COMFORT

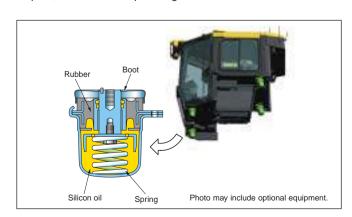


HST with electronic control

The D39 is equipped with Komatsu-designed Hydrostatic Transmission (HST) that allows for Quick-Shift or variable speed selection. The HST consists of dual-path closed-circuits with two variable displacement piston pumps and two variable displacement travel motors. Hydrostatic steering eliminates steering clutches and brakes, providing smooth powerful turns. Fully electronic control provides full automatic shifting and enables smooth control. Engine speed is controlled using an electronic fuel control dial.

Comfortable ride with cab damper mounting

The D39's cab mount uses a cab damper system that provides excellent shock and vibration absorption which conventional mounting systems are unable to match. The silicon oil filled cab damper mount helps to isolate the cab from the machine body, suppressing vibration and providing a quiet, comfortable operating environment.



Palm command Proportional Pressure Control (PPC)

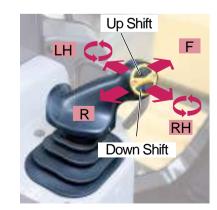
PPC-controlled palm command joystick provides blade control. Combined with the highly reliable Komatsu hydraulic system, precise control is the result.

Closed-center Load Sensing System (CLSS) hydraulic system

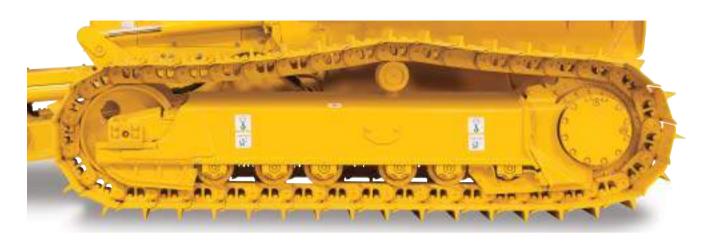
With CLSS hydraulics, blade lever stroke is directly proportional to blade speed, regardless of the load and travel speed. This results in superb fine controllability.

Palm Command Control System (PCCS)

The low-effort PCCS joystick controls all directional movements including machine travel speed as well as counter-rotation.



DURABILITY FEATURES



Heavy-duty undercarriage

Large link, large bushing diameter, and wider sprocket teeth extend undercarriage life.

Protected travel motors and final drives

Travel motors and final drives are mounted within the track shoe width for protection from rocks and stumps, and for improving durability.



Monocoque track frame

Komatsu's monocoque track frame design using thicker box section material and fewer welded components provides increased rigidity and strength.

One-piece nose guard

Simplified high-rigidity structure with thicker plates reduces vibration and noise.

Main frame

High-rigidity simple main frame structure combined with thick plates and steel castings provide increased reliability and durability.



Modular design

One of the design goals behind the creation of the D39 was to manufacture a more durable machine. This was achieved by reducing component complexity and using a strong modular design for increased serviceability and durability.



D39-22

PRODUCTIVITY FEATURES

This engine is EPA Tier 3, EU Stage 3A and Japan emissions certified; "ecot3" - ecology and economy combine with Komatsu

technology to create a high performance engine without sacrificing power or productivity.

Fuel efficient electronic controlled engine

The Komatsu SAA4D107E-1 engine delivers a net output of 79 kW 105 HP at 2200 rpm. The powerful Komatsu engine incorporated into the D39-22 makes this dozer fuel efficient and the logical choice in both grading and dozing operations. The engine is turbocharged and features direct fuel injection and air-to-air aftercooling to maximize power, fuel efficiency, and emission compliance. To minimize noise and vibration, the engine is iso-mounted to the main frame.

Hydraulically-driven cooling fan

The engine cooling fan rotation speed and direction is electronically controlled. The fan rotation speed depends on engine coolant and hydraulic oil temperatures; the higher the temperature, the higher the fan speed. This system increases fuel efficiency, reduces operating noise levels, and requires less horsepower than a belt-driven fan.

Long track-on-ground

Long track-on-ground improves machine stability and grading/dozing performance.

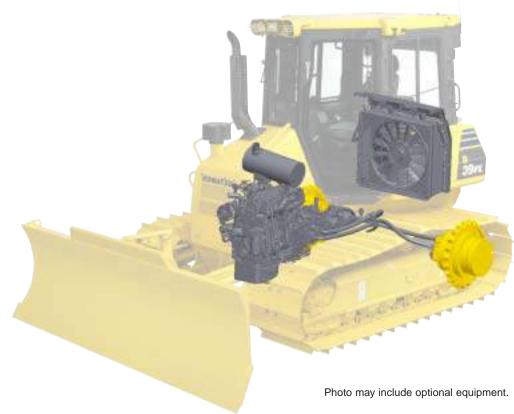
Pitch-Adjustable PAT dozer blade

Blade pitch angle can be easily adjusted by changing the length of the pitch rod on the top of the blade. This enables to provide maximum job efficiency in various material and ground conditions.



Hydrostatic Transmission (HST) control system

The HST controller monitors engine output and work equipment/travel load. It controls HST pump and motor displacement to provide the optimum speed and drawbar pull. Power to both tracks during turns and counter-rotation makes the D39 extremely maneuverable.



MAINTENANCE FEATURES

Hydraulically-driven swing-up fan

The D39-22 utilizes a swing-up fan with a gas strut-assisted lift locking system to provide easy access to the radiator, oil cooler, and charge air cooler. The swing-up feature makes it easier to access cooling cores. The hydraulic fan has a "cleaning" mode. The fan rotates in the reverse direction and helps to clear off objects in front of the cooling areas.



Photo may include optional equipment

Remote grease points

Remote grease points facilitate lubrication of the C-frame pivots and angle cylinder bearing.

Adjustment-free parking disc brake

An adjustment-free spring-applied hydraulic release wet parking brake is located in each final drive.

New monitor with self-diagnostic function

The monitor system provides critical information about the machine. It provides operating condition status and notifies the operator with a lamp and buzzer when an abnormality occurs. In addition, fault codes are indicated to aid troubleshooting and help reduce machine downtime. Service reminders for fluids and filters are also indicated.



Daily checks

All daily checks can be performed efficiently at ground level.

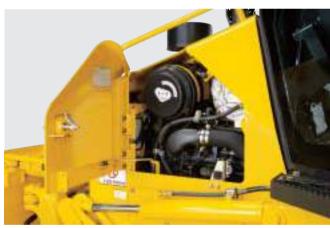


Photo may include optional equipment



SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

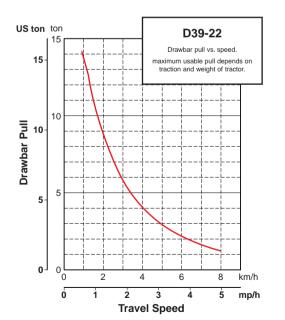


HYDROSTATIC TRANSMISSION

Dual-path, hydrostatic transmission provides infinite speed changes up to **8.5 km/h** 5.3 mph. The variable capacity travel motors allow the operator to select the optimum speed to match specific jobs. Travel control lock lever and neutral switch.

Travel speed (quick shift mode)	Forward		Revo	erse
1st	0-3.4 km/h	0-2.1 mph	0-4.1 km/h	0-2.5 mph
2nd	0-5.6 km/h	0-3.5 mph	0-6.5 km/h	0-4.0 mph
3rd	0-8.5 km/h	0-5.3 mph	0-8.5 km/h	0-5.3 mph

Travel speed (variable mode)	Forv	vard	Revo	erse
	0-8.5 km/h	0-5.3 mph	0-8.5 km/h	0-5.3 mph





Two-stage planetary gear integrated into axial piston travel motors. Compact in-shoe mount reduces risk of damage by debris. Bolt-on sprocket for easy replacement.



STEERING SYSTEM

Palm Command Control System (PCCS) joystick control for all directional movements. Pushing the joystick forward results in forward machine travel, while pulling it rearward reverses the machine. Simply tilt the joystick to the left or right to make a turn. Tilting the joystick fully to the left or right activates counter-rotation. Hydrostatic Transmission (HST) eliminates steering clutches and brakes, providing smooth powerful turns. Fully electronic control enables smooth control. The PCCS utilizes shift buttons to increase and decrease speed.

D39EX-22	7'3"
D39PX-22	7'10"

As measured by track marks on the ground at pivot turn.



UNDERCARRIAGE

Suspension	Rigid type
Track roller frame	Monocoque, large section,
	durable construction
Rollers and idlers	Lubricated track rollers

Lubricated tracks

Unique seals prevent entry of foreign abrasive material into pin to bushing clearances to provide extended service life. Track tension is easily adjusted with a grease gun.

	i	1
	D39EX-22	D39PX-22
Number of track rollers (each side)	6	6
Type of shoes (standard)	Single grouser	Single grouser
Number of shoes (each side)	39	39
Grouser height	53 mm 2.1"	53 mm 2.1"
Shoe width (standard)	460 mm 18.1"	635 mm 25.0"
Ground contact area	21710 cm² 3,365 in²	29970 cm² 4,645 in²
Ground pressure (with dozer, ROPS cab)	40.8 kPa 0.42 kgf/cm² 5.92 psi	31.0 kPa 0.32 kgf/cm ² 4.50 psi
Track gauge	1650 mm 5'5"	1790 mm 5'10"
Length of track on ground	2360 mm 7'9"	2360 mm 7'9"



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILL)

Coolant	6.1 U.S. gal
Fuel tank	51.5 U.S. gal
Engine oil	4.0 U.S. gal
Hydraulic tank	15.9 U.S. gal
Final drive (each side)	0.9 U.S. gal



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Tractor weight

Including ROPS canopy, rated capacity of lubricant, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

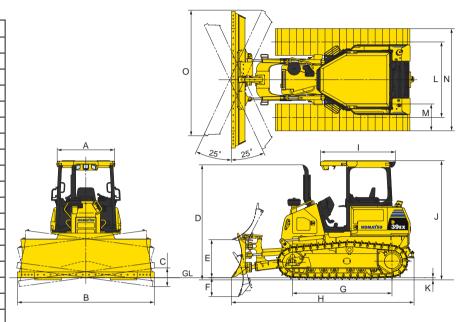
, I				
D39EX-22.	 	 	7800 kg	17,196 lb
D39PX-22.	 	 	8160 kg	17,990 lb

Operating weight:

Including power angle tilt dozer, ROPS canopy, operator, standard
equipment, rated capacity of lubricant, coolant, and full fuel tank.
D39EX-22 9040 kg 19,930 lb
D39PX-22 9480 kg 20,900 lb



D39EX-22 A* 1280 mm 4'2" 1280 mm 4'2" B 2710 mm 8'11" 3250 mm 10'8" B* — 2980 mm 9'9" C 370 mm 1'3" 445 mm 1'5" C — 405 mm 1'4" D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"					
B 2710 mm 8'11" 3250 mm 10'8" B* — 2980 mm 9'9" C 370 mm 1'3" 445 mm 1'5" C — 405 mm 1'4" D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9" <th></th> <th colspan="2">D39EX-22</th> <th>D39PX-</th> <th>22</th>		D39EX-22		D39PX-	22
B* — 2980 mm 9'9" C 370 mm 1'3" 445 mm 1'5" C — 405 mm 1'4" D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	Α*	1280 mm	4'2"	1280 mm	4'2"
C 370 mm 1'3" 445 mm 1'5" C — 405 mm 1'4" D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" J 2835 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	В	2710 mm 8	3'11"	3250 mm	10'8"
C — 405 mm 1'4" D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	B*	_		2980 mm	9'9"
D 2730 mm 8'11" 2730 mm 8'11" E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	С	370 mm	1'3"	445 mm	1'5"
E 900 mm 2'11" 900 mm 2'11" F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	С	_		405 mm	1'4"
F 450 mm 1'6" 450 mm 1'6" G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	D	2730 mm 8	3'11"	2730 mm	8'11"
G 2360 mm 7'9" 2360 mm 7'9" H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	Е	900 mm 2	!'11"	900 mm	2'11"
H 4335 mm 14'3" 4335 mm 14'3" I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	F	450 mm	1'6"	450 mm	1'6"
I 2245 mm 7'4" 2245 mm 7'4" J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	G	2360 mm	7'9"	2360 mm	7'9"
J 2835 mm 9'4" 2835 mm 9'4" K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	Н	4335 mm 1	4'3"	4335 mm	14'3"
K 53 mm 2.1" 53 mm 2.1" L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	I	2245 mm	7'4"	2245 mm	7'4"
L 1650 mm 5'5" 1790 mm 5'10" M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	J	2835 mm	9'4"	2835 mm	9'4"
M 460 mm 18.1" 635 mm 25.0" N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	K	53 mm	2.1"	53 mm	2.1"
N 2110 mm 6'11" 2425 mm 7'11" O 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	L	1650 mm	5'5"	1790 mm	5'10"
0 2490 mm 8'2" 2980 mm 9'9"	M	460 mm 1	8.1"	635 mm	25.0"
-	N	2110 mm 6	5'11"	2425 mm	7'11"
0.750 0.1011		2490 mm	8'2"	2980 mm	9'9"
U — 2/50 mm 90°	0*	_		2750 mm	9'0"



*Narrow blade for D39PX-22

*

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Closed-center Load Sensing System (CLSS) designed for precise and responsive control and for efficient simultaneous operation.

Hydraulic control unit:

All spool control valves externally mounted remote to the hydraulic tank. Piston-type hydraulic pump with capacity (discharge flow) of **99 Itr/min** 26.2 U.S. gal/min at rated engine rpm.

Relief valve setting	. 27.4 MPa, 280 kg/cm² 3,983 psi
Hydraulic cylinders	Double-acting, piston type

	Number of cylinders	Bore
Blade lift	2	75 mm 2.95"
Blade tilt	1	90 mm 3.54"
Blade angle	2	80 mm 3.15"

Hydraulic oil capacity (refilling):

Control valves:

3-spool control valve for power angle tilt dozer.

Positions:

blade iiit	ı
Blade tilt Right, hold, and lef	t
Blade angle Right, hold, and lef	t

Paige hold lower and float

Additional control valve required for ripper.

Positions:



DOZER EQUIPMENT

Use of high tensile strength steel in moldboard for strengthened blade construction.

	Overall length with dozer*	Blade capacity (SAE)	Blade width x height	Maximum lift above ground	Maximum drop below ground	Maximum tilt adjustment	Blade angle
D39EX-22 PAT	4325 mm	2.21 m³	2710 mm x 980 mm	900 mm	450 mm	370 mm	25
Standard Blade	14'2"	2.89 yd³	8'11" x 3'3"	2'11"	1'6"	1'3"	
D39PX-22 PAT	4325 mm	2.30 m³	3250 mm x 910 mm	900 mm	450 mm	440 mm	25
Standard Blade	14'2"	3.00 yd³	10'8" x 3'0"	2'11"	1'6"	1'5"	
D39PX-22 PAT	4325 mm	2.08 m³	2980 mm x 910 mm	900 mm	450 mm	405 mm	25
Narrow Blade	14'2"	2.72 yd³	9'9" x 3'0"	2'11"	1'6"	1'4"	

* Including Hitch



Gross: 155 kW 207 HP @ 1950 rpm **Net: 153 kW** 205 HP @ 1950 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

D65EX-16 19510 kg 43,010 lb **D65PX-16 20990 kg** 46,270 lb **D65WX-16 20360 kg** 44,880 lb

KOMATSU®

D65EX-16 D65PX-16 D65WX-16

ecot3

65



CRAWLER DOZER

WALK-AROUND

OUTSTANDING PRODUCTIVITY & FUEL ECONOMY

Innovative SIGMADOZER reduces digging resistance and smoothly rolls material up for increased blade loads.

Blade capacity **5.6 m³** 7.3 yd³ (for EX)

5.9 m³ 7.7 yd³ (for WX) See page 4.

Automatic transmission with lockup torque converter improves fuel consumption. See page 5.

Complete operator control with PCCS (Palm Command Control System)

- Electronic controlled PCCS travel control
- Hydraulic controlled PCCS blade/ripper control
- Fuel control dial
- Automatic/manual gearshift selectable mode
- Gearshift pattern preset function
- ECMV controlled transmission See page 7.

Increased-track length for EX/WX

ensures outstanding grading ability and stability.

SAA6D114E turbocharged after-cooled diesel engine provides an output of **155 kW** 207 HP with excellent fuel economy. This engine is EPA Tier 3 and EU stage 3A emissions certified. See page 6.

Hydraulic drive radiator cooling

fan controlled automatically, reduces fuel consumption and operating noise levels. See page 6.

Gull-wing engine side covers

for easy and efficient engine servicing See page 9.

Blade tilt lines completely protected

PLUS (Parallel Link Undercarriage System) provides

longer wear life and lower repair & maintenance costs with new rotating bushings and other key enhancements. See page 9.

PAT (Power Angle and Tilt Dozer) expands productivity in a variety of applications. The manually adjustable blade pitch further expands versatility and productivity. See page 8.



HORSEPOWER Gross: 155 kW 207 HP @ 1950 rpm Net: 153 kW 205 HP @ 1950 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

D65EX-16: **19510 kg** 43,010 lb D65PX-16: **20990 kg** 46,270 lb

D65WX-16: 20360 kg 44,880 lb

BLADE CAPACITY

SIGMADOZER: D65EX-16: 5.61 m³ 7.34 yd³

D65WX-16: 5.90 m3 7.72 yd3

Straight Tilt Dozer:

New integrated ROPS cab includes:

- Large quiet operator environment
- Comfortable ride with new cab damper
- Excellent visibility without ROPS post
- Automatic high capacity air conditioning
- Pressurized cab
- Adjustable armrest and suspension seat See page 8.

HSS (Hydrostatic Steering System) provides smooth, quick, and powerful control in various ground conditions. See page 7.



Large TFT LCD monitor

- Easy-to-read and use 7" large multi-color
- Choice of 10 languages for global support

TFT: Thin Film Transistor LCD: Liquid Crystal Display

See page 8.

Automatic adjusted idler support provides long life of wear plate without gap and vibration. See page 9.

High-rigidity, simple hull frame

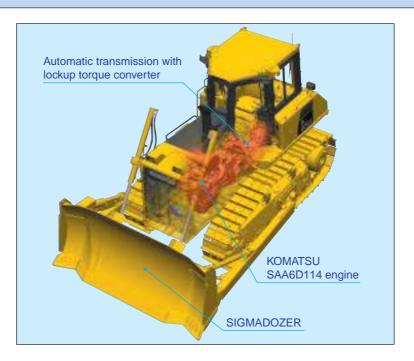
and monocogue track frame with pivot shaft for greater reliability. See page 9.



Modular power train for increased serviceability and durability. Forward mounted pivot shafts isolate final drives from blade loads. See page 9.

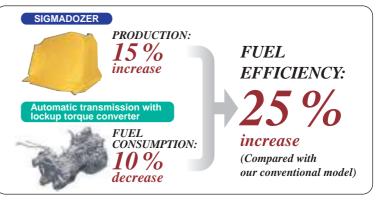
Wet, multiple-disc brakes adjustment free for excellent service life. See page 9.

PRODUCTIVITY & FUEL ECONOMY FEATURES



New fuel efficient bulldozer

The new D65 has achieved both high levels of productivity and fuel economy through the usage of SIGMADOZER and automatic transmission with lockup torque converter. SIGMADOZER developed based on completely new digging theory dramatically increases production. New transmission with high power transmission efficiency greatly reduces fuel consumption. This bulldozer significantly improves fuel efficiency compared with our conventional model.



Outstanding productivity

SIGMADOZER - The next generation blade

Based on a completely new digging theory, SIGMADOZER dramatically improves dozing performance and increases productivity. A new frontal design concept adopted for digging and rolling up at the center of the blade increases soil holding capacity while simultaneously reducing sideway spillage. It also reduces digging resistance producing a

Production increased by 15%

(compared with our conventional model)

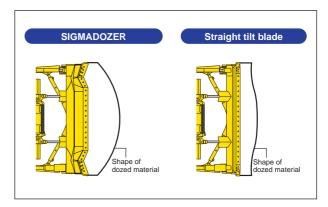
smoother flow of earth, enabling the dozing of larger quantities of soil with less power.



SIGMADOZER (D65-16)



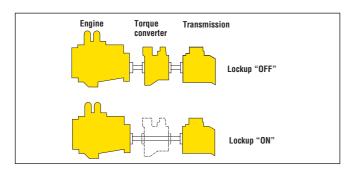
Straight tilt blade (D65-15E0)



Outstanding fuel economy

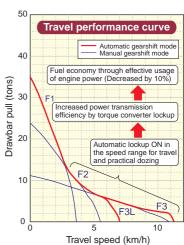
Automatic transmission with lockup torque converter

A sharp reduction in fuel consumption and greater power train efficiency is achieved by the new automatic gearshift transmission and lockup torque converter. The automatic transmission selects the optimal gear range depending on the working conditions and load placed on the machine. This means the machine is always operating at maximum efficiency.



Fuel consumption decreased by 10 % (compared with our conventional model)

Lockup mechanism of the torque converter is automatically actuated to transfer engine power directly to the transmission in travelling and usual dozing speed ranges. Locking up the torque converter eliminates loss of power by 10%. Because the electronically controlled engine is extremely efficient, a decrease in fuel consumption is realized while also maintaining machine power.



Automatic/manual gearshift selectable mode

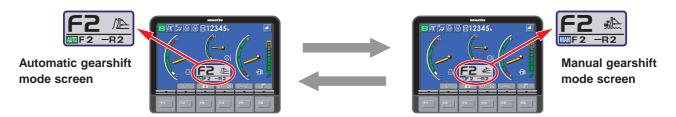
Automatic or manual gearshift modes can be selected with ease to suit the work at hand by simply pressing the switch on the multi-monitor (selection at neutral).

Automatic gearshift mode

Select for all general dozing. When a load is applied, the transmission automatically shifts down, and when the load is off, it automatically shifts up to a set maximum gear speed. This mode economizes both fuel and production further where the torque converter lockup mechanism is actuated according to load, providing a one to one drive.

Manual gearshift mode

Select for dozing and ripping rough ground. When loaded, the transmission automatically shifts down, but does not shift up when the load is off.



Selectable working mode

Working mode P is the mode aiming for powerful operation and maximum production and mode E for general dozing applications with adequate speed and power while saving energy. For CO₂ reduction and energy saving, the monitor panel allows for switching the working mode with ease, depending on the work at hand.

• P mode (Power mode)

With P mode, the engine outputs its full power, allowing the machine to perform the work requiring large production, heavy-load work, and uphill work.

• E mode (Economy mode)

With E mode, the engine outputs enough power for the work without delivering unnecessary power. This mode allows for energy saving operation and is suitable for the work on a ground where the machine may cause shoe slip and the work not requiring large power such as downhill dozing, leveling and light-load work.

ECOLOGY FEATURES





Komatsu develops and produces all major components, such as engines, electronics and hydraulic components in house.

Since all components can be matched, efficiencies are increased achieving high levels of productivity and ecology. With this "Komatsu Technology", and adding customer feedback, Komatsu is achieving great advancements in technology.

The result is a new generation of high performance and environment friendly machines.



Engine

Fuel efficient electronic controlled engine

The Komatsu SAA6D114E engine delivers **155 kW** 207 HP at 1950 rpm. The fuel-efficient, powerful Komatsu engine makes the D65 superior in both ripping and dozing operations. The engine is EPA Tier 3 and EU stage 3A emissions certified. The engine is turbocharged and features direct fuel injection and air-to-air aftercooling to maximize power, fuel efficiency and emission compliance.

To minimize noise and vibration, the engine is mounted to the main frame with rubber cushions.



Hydraulic drive radiator cooling fan

The engine cooling fan rotation speed is electronically controlled. The fan rotation speed depends on engine coolant and hydraulic oil temperatures, the higher the temperature the higher the fan speed. This system increases fuel efficiency, reduces the operating noise levels and requires less horsepower than belt driven fan.

CONTROL FEATURES

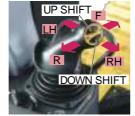


Human-Machine Interface PCCS (Palm Command Control System)

Komatsu's ergonomically designed control system "PCCS" creates an operating environment with "complete operator control."

Palm command electronic controlled travel joystick

Palm command travel joystick provides the operator with a relaxed posture and superb fine control without operator fatigue. Transmission gear shifting is simplified with thumb push buttons.



Gearshift pattern preset function

When the gearshift pattern is set to either <F1-R2>, <F2-R1>, <F2-R2>, <F2-R3L> or <F3L-R3L> in the automatic gearshift mode, the gear automatically shifts to the preset gear when the travel control joystick is set to Forward or Reverse position, reducing round trip repetition work time and operator's efforts. Gearshift pattern <F2-R3L> and <F3L-R3L> are newly added for high speed leveling operation.

Automatic

F1-R1 MODE

F1-R2 MODE

F2-R1 MODE

F2-R2 MODE DOWN switch 🕇 👃 Press UP switch

F2-R3L MODE s DOWN switch The Press UP switch F3L-R3L MODE

OWN switch The Press UP switch

switch Turess UP switch



Manual gearshift mode gearshift mode

F1-R1 MODE F1-R2 MODE /N switch TPress UP switch F2-R1 MODE DOWN switch T Press UP switch F2-R2 MODE Press DOWN switch 1 Press UP switch F2-R3 MODE

Palm command hydraulic controlled blade/ripper joystick

Hydraulically-controlled palm command joystick is equipped for blade/ ripper control. Combined with the highly reliable Komatsu hydraulic system, superb control is the result.

ECMV (Electronic Controlled Modulation Valve) controlled transmission

A controller automatically adjusts each clutch engagement depending on travel conditions, providing smooth shockless clutch engagement, improved component life and operator ride comfort.

Hydrostatic Steering System—smooth, powerful

The engine power is transmitted to both tracks without power interruption on the inside track for smooth, powerful turns. Counter-rotation is available for minimum turning radius enhancing maneuverability.



WORKING ENVIRONMENT





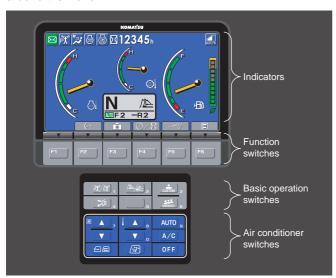
New integrated ROPS cab

A newly designed cab is integrated with ROPS according to the latest computer analysis. High rigidity and superb sealing performance sharply reduce noise and vibration for the operator and prevent dust from entering the cab. Relaxed operation in comfortable environment. In addition, side visibility is increased because external ROPS structure and posts are not required. Outstanding visibility has been achieved.

Large multi-lingual LCD color monitor

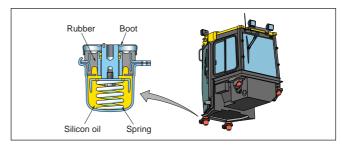
A large user-friendly color monitor enables safe, accurate and smooth work. Excellent screen visibility is achieved by use of TFT liquid crystal display that can easily be read at various angles and lighting conditions. Simple and easy to operate switches. Plus function keys facilitate multi-function operations.

Display data in 10 languages to globally support operators around the world.



Comfortable ride with cab damper mounting

The D65's cab mount uses a cab damper which provides excellent shock and vibration absorption capacity. The long stroke cab damper mounts soften shocks and vibration while traveling over adverse conditions, which conventional rubber mounting systems are unable to absorb. The cab damper spring isolates the cab from the machine body, suppressing vibration and providing a quiet, comfortable operating environment.



Power angle power tilt dozer (Optional)

A power angle and power tilt dozer blade with highly durable box-structure frame is optionally available. This dozer is available for the EX, WX and PX machines. The hydraulic blade tilt and angling function expands versatility and productivity in a variety of applications. The manually adjustable blade pitch further expands the versatility and productivity.



MAINTENANCE FEATURES

Preventative maintenance

Preventative maintenance is the only way to ensure long service life from your equipment. That's why Komatsu designed the D65 with conveniently located maintenance points to make necessary inspections and maintenance quick and easy.

Multi-monitor with troubleshooting function to prevent critical machine troubles

Various meters, gauges and warning functions are centrally arranged on the multi-monitor. The monitor simplifies start-up inspection and promptly warns the operator with a lamp and buzzer if any abnormalities should occur. In addition,

countermeasures are indicated in 4 levels to ensure safety and prevent the machine from major problems. Replacement times for oil and filters are also indicated.



Easy radiator cleaning with hydraulic drive fan

The radiator can be cleaned by utilization of the reversible, hydraulically driven cooling fan. The fan can be reversed from inside the cab by simply activating a switch.

Oil pressure check ports

Pressure check ports for power train components are centralized to promote quick and simple diagnosis.

Gull-wing engine side covers

The engine side covers are gull-wing type with a gas spring, and the opening angle of the cover is further increased to facilitate engine maintenance and filter replacement.

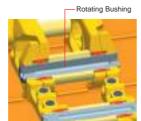


Low maintenance costs

Parallel Link Undercarriage System (PLUS) (Optional)

Komatsu's innovative Parallel Link Undercarriage System features a rotary bushing that demonstrates high durability in any working conditions. Allowing the bushing to rotate virtually eliminates bushing wear, resulting in doubled

service life of the undercarriage when compared with the conventional undercarriage. In addition, wear limits of the link and carrier roller are increased to balance with the extended service life of the bushing.



Self-adjusting idler support

Self-adjusting idler support applies a constant spring force to the wear plate of the idler guide to eliminate the play of the idler. This results in reduced noise and vibration as well as extends the service life of the wear plate.

Reliable simple hull frame

Simple hull structure main frame design increases durability and reduces stress concentration at critical areas. The track frame has a large cross section and utilizes pivot shaft mounting for greater reliability.

Sealed DT connectors

Main harnesses and controller connectors are equipped with sealed DT connectors providing high reliability, as well as water and dust resistance.

Flat face O-ring seals

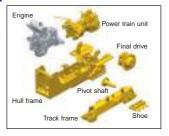
Flat face O-ring seals are used to securely seal all hydraulic hose connections preventing leakage.

Enclosed hydraulic piping

Hydraulic piping for the blade tilt cylinder is completely housed in the push arm, protecting it from damage.

Modular power train design

Power train components are sealed in a modular design that allows the components to be removed and installed without oil spillage, making servicing work clean, smooth and easy.



Adjustment-free disc brakes

Wet disc brakes are adjustment-free and provide excellent service life.

SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

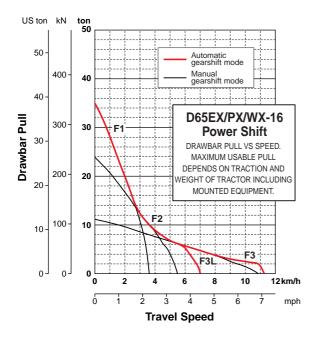
Model
Bore x stroke
Piston displacement 8.27 ltr 505 in ³
Governor All-speed and mid-range, electronic
Horsepower
SAE J1995 Gross 155 kW 207 HP
(ISO 14396 Maximum Gross 163.7 kW 219 HP)
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349* Net 153 kW 205 HP
Rated rpm
Fan drive type
Lubrication system
Method Gear pump, force lubrication
Filter Full-flow
*Net horsepower at the maximum speed of
radiator cooling fan
EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions certified.



TORQFLOW TRANSMISSION

Komatsu TORQFLOW transmission consists of a water-cooled, 3-element, 1-stage, 2-phase, torque converter with lockup clutch, and a planetary gear, multiple-disc clutch transmission which is hydraulically actuated and force-lubricated for optimum heat dissipation. Gearshift lock lever and neutral safety switch prevent machine from accidental starts.

Travel speed	Forward	Reverse
1st	3.6 km/h 2.2 mph	4.4 km/h 2.7 mph
2nd	5.5 km/h 3.4 mph	6.6 km/h 4.1 mph
3rdL	7.2 km/h 4.5 mph	8.6 km/h 5.3 mph
3rd	11.2 km/h 7.0 mph	13.4 km/h 8.3 mph





STEERING SYSTEM

PCCS lever controls for all directional movements. Pushing the PCCS lever forward results in forward machine travel, while pulling it rearward reverses the machine. Simply tilt the PCCS lever to left to make a left turn. Tilt it to the right for a right turn.

Hydrostatic Steering System (HSS) is powered by steering planetary units and a hydraulic pump and motor. Counter-rotation turns are also available. Wet, multiple-disc, pedal-controlled service brakes are spring-actuated and hydraulically released. Gear shift lock lever also applies parking brake.



UNDERCARRIAGE

Suspension Oscillating equalizer bar and pivot shaft Track roller frame Monocoque, large section, durable construction Rollers and idlers Lubricated track rollers

Track shoes

Lubricated tracks. Unique seals prevent entry of foreign abrasive material into pin to bushing clearances to provide extended service life. Track tension is easily adjusted with grease gun.

		D65EX-16	D65PX-16	D65WX-16
Type of dozer		SIGMADOZER	Straight Tilt Dozer	SIGMADOZER
Number of track rollers (ea	ch side)	7	8	7
Type of shoes (standard)		Single grouser	Single grouser	Single grouser
Number of shoes (each sid	e)	42	45	42
Grouser height	mm in	65 2.6"	65 2.6"	65 2.6"
Shoe width (standard)	mm in	510 20"	915 36"	760 30"
Ground contact area	cm² in²	30395 (30295) 4,711 (4,696)	60115 (59935) 9,318 (9,290)	45295 (45145) 7,021 (6,997)
Ground pressure (tractor)	kPa kgf/cm² psi	55.2 (56.4) 0.56 (0.58) 8.01 (8.18)	30.8 (31.4) 0.31 (0.32) 4.47 (4.56)	38.6 (39.4) 0.39 (0.40) 5.61 (5.73)
Track gauge mm ft.in		1880 6'2"	2050 6'9"	2050 6'9"
Length of track on ground	mm ft.in	2980 (2970) 9'9" (9'9")	3285 (3275) 10'9" (10'9")	2980 (2970) 9'9" (9'9")

for PAT Dozer

		D65EX-16	D65PX-16	D65WX-16
Type of dozer	Type of dozer		Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer	Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer
Number of track rollers (ea	ch side)	7	8	7
Type of shoes (standard)		Single grouser	Single grouser	Single grouser
Number of shoes (each sid	e)	42	45	42
Grouser height	mm in	65 2.6"	65 2.6"	65 2.6"
Shoe width (standard)	mm in	560 22"	760 30"	760 30"
Ground contact area	cm² in²	33375 (33265) 5,173 (5,156)	49930 (49780) 7,739 (7,716)	45295 (45145) 7,021 (6,997)
Ground pressure (tractor)	kPa kgf/cm² psi	52.9 (54.0) 0.54 (0.55) 7.68 (7.84)	37.0 (37.8) 0.38 (0.39) 5.38 (5.49)	40.9 (41.7) 0.42 (0.43) 5.94 (6.05)
Track gauge	Track gauge mm ft.in		2230 7'4"	2230 7'4"
Length of track on ground	mm ft.in	2980 (2970) 9'9" (9'9")	3285 (3275) 10'9" (10'9")	2980 (2970) 9'9" (9'9")



Double-reduction final drive of spur and planetary gear sets to increase tractive effort and reduce gear tooth stresses for long final drive life. Segmented sprocket teeth are bolt-on for easy replacement.

COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILL)

Fuel tank	109.6 U.S. gal
Coolant	9.5 U.S. gal
Engine	7.4 U.S. gal
Torque converter, transmission,	
bevel gear, and steering system 48 ltr	12.7 U.S. gal
Final drive (each side)	
D65EX-16 24 ltr	6.3 U.S. gal
D65EX-16 with PAT 27 ltr	7.1 U.S. gal
D65PX-16 27 ltr	7.1 U.S. gal
D65WX-16	7.1 U.S. gal



HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Closed-center load sensing system (CLSS) designed for precise and responsive control, and for efficient simultaneous operation.

Hydraulic control units:

All spool valves externally mounted beside the hydraulic tank. Plunger type hydraulic pump with capacity (discharge flow) of **248 ltr/min** 65.5 U.S. gal/min at rated engine rpm.

Spool control valves for SIGMADOZER or straight tilt dozer

Positions: Blade lift Raise, hold, lower, and float Blade tilt Right, hold, and left

Spool control valves for power angle power tilt dozer

 Hydraulic cylinders Double-acting, piston

	Number of	Bore			
	cylinders	SIGMADOZER Straight Tilt Dozer	Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer		
Blade lift	2	85 mm 3.3"	90 mm 3.5"		
Blade tilt	1	125 mm 4.9"	130 mm 5.1"		
Blade angle	2	_	110 mm 4.3"		
Ripper lift	1	125 mm 4.9"	125 mm 4.9"		

Hydraulic oil capacity (refill):	ltr	14.5 U.S. gal
Ripper equipment (additional volume):		
Multi-shank ripper	ltr	1.8 U.S. gal



DOZER EQUIPMENT

Blade capacities are based on the SAE recommended practice J1265. Use of high tensile strength steel in moldboard for strengthened blade construction.

	Overall Length With Dozer	Blade Capacity	Blade Width x Height	Max. Lift Above Ground	Max. Drop Below Ground	Max. Tilt Adjustment	Weight Dozer equipment	Ground Pressure*
	mm ft.in	m³ yd³	mm ft.in	mm ft.in	mm ft.in	mm ft.in	kg lb	kPa kg/cm² psi
D65EX-16 SIGMADOZER	5490 18'0"	5.61 7.34	3410 x 1425 11'2" x 4'8"	1130 (1135) 3'8" (3'9")	505 (500) 1'8" (1'8")	870 2'10"	2390 5,270	62.9 /0.64/9.13 (64.1 /0.65/9.31)
D65EX-16 semi-U Tilt Dozer	5510 18'1"	5.61 7.34	3460 x 1425 11'4" x 4'8"	1110 (1115) 3'8" (3'8")	440 (435) 1'5" (1'5")	855 2'10"	2320 5,115	62.9 /0.64/9.13 (64.1 /0.65/9.31)
D65EX-16 Straight Tilt Dozer	5330 17'6"	3.89 5.09	3415 x 1225 11'2" x 4'0"	1100 (1105) 3'7" (3'8")	435 (430) 1'5" (1'5")	870 2'10"	2060 4,540	61.8 /0.63/8.98 (63.0 /0.64/9.15)
D65EX-16 Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer	5790 19'0"	4.25 5.56	3870 x 1235 12'8" x 4'1"	1165 (1170) 3'10" (3'10")	700 (695) 2'4" (2'3")	500 1'8"	2960 6,530	61.6 /0.63/8.95 (62.8 /0.64/9.11)
D65EX-16 Angle Dozer	5540 18'2"	3.55 4.64	3970 x 1100 13'0" x 3'7"	1175 (1180) 3'10" (3'10")	445 (440) 1'6" (1'5")	400 1'4"	2200 4,850	62.3 /0.64/9.04 (63.5 /0.65/9.22)
D65PX-16 Straight Tilt Dozer	5680 18'8"	3.69 4.83	3970 x 1100 13'0" x 3'7"	1125 (1130) 3'8" (3'8")	540 (535) 1'9" (1'9")	890 2'11"	2100 4,630	34.2 /0.35/4.97 (34.8 /0.36/5.06)
D65PX-16 Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer	5790 19'0"	4.42 5.78	4010 x 1235 13'2" x 4'1"	1165 (1170) 3'10" (3'10")	700 (695) 2'4" (2'3")	520 1'8"	2990 6,590	42.9 /0.44/6.23 (43.7 /0.45/6.34)
D65WX-16 SIGMADOZER	5500 18'1"	5.90 7.72	3580 x 1425 11'9" x 4'8"	1130 (1135) 3'8" (3'9")	505 (500) 1'8" (1'8")	770 2'6"	2500 5,510	44.1 /0.45/6.39 (44.9 /0.46/6.51)
D65WX-16 Power Angle Power Tilt Dozer	5790 19'0"	4.42 5.78	4010 x 1235 13'2" x 4'1"	1165 (1170) 3'10" (3'10")	700 (695) 2'4" (2'3")	520 1'8"	2990 6,590	47.4 /0.48/6.87 (48.2 /0.49/7.00)

^{*}Ground pressure shows tractor, ROPS cab, operator, standard equipment and applicable blade.

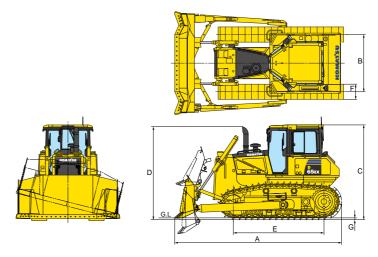
^{() ...} PLUS spec.

DIMENSIONS

	D65EX-16 Sigmadozer	D65PX-16 Straight Tilt Dozer	D65WX-16 Sigmadozer
Α	5490 mm 18'0"	5680 mm 18'8"	5500 mm 18'1"
В	1880 mm 6'2"	2050 mm 6'9"	2050 mm 6'9"
С	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")
D	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")
Ε	2980 mm 9'9" (2970 mm 9'9")	3285 mm 10'9" (3275 mm 10'9")	2980 mm 9'9" (2970 mm 9'9")
F	510 mm 20"	915 mm 36"	760 mm 30"
G	65 mm 2.6"	65 mm 2.6"	65 mm 2.6"

Ground clearance \dots .410 mm 1'4" (415 mm 1'4")

() ... PLUS spec.



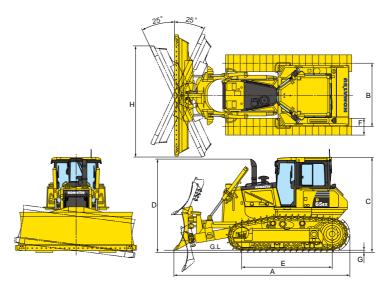
Dimension with SIGMADOZER (D65EX-16) single grouser shoe.

for PAT Dozer

	D65EX-16 PAT Dozer	D65PX-16 PAT Dozer	D65WX-16 PAT Dozer
Α	5790 mm 19'0"	5790 mm 19'0"	5790 mm 19'0"
В	2050 mm 6'9"	2230 mm 7'4"	2230 mm 7'4"
С	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")	3155 mm 10'4" (3160 mm 10'4")
D	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")	3080 mm 10'1" (3085 mm 10'1")
Ε	2980 mm 9'9" (2970 mm 9'9")	3285 mm 10'9" (3275 mm 10'9")	2980 mm 9'9" (2970 mm 9'9")
F	560 mm 22"	760 mm 30"	760 mm 30"
G	65 mm 2.6"	65 mm 2.6"	65 mm 2.6"
Н	3545 mm 11'8"	3670 mm 12'0"	3670 mm 12'0"

Ground clearance 410 mm 1'4" (415 mm 1'4")

() ... PLUS spec.



Dimension with Power angle power tilt dozer (D65EX-16) single grouser shoe.

OPERATING WEIGHT

Tractor weight:

for PAT dozer

() ... PLUS spec.

Operating weight

Including SIGMADOZER (EX/WX) or straight tilt dozer (PX) or power angle power tilt dozer, ROPS cab, operator, standard equipment, rated capacity of lubricant, hydraulic control unit, coolant, and full fuel tank.

for PAT dozer

() ... PLUS spec.



STANDARD EQUIPMENT FOR BASE MACHINE

- Air cleaner, double element with dust indicator
- Alternator, 60 ampere/24V
- Backup alarm
- Batteries, 140 Ah/2 x 12V
- Color monitor
- Decelerator pedal
- Engine hood
- Engine side covers, gull-wing
- Fenders
- High mount foot rests
 Hydraulic drive radiator cooling fan with clean mode
- Locks, filler caps and coversMuffler with curved exhaust pipe
- Oil pressure check ports for power train Radiator mask, heavy-duty, hinged
- Radiator reserve tank
- Rear counterweight (EX, WX with PAT)
- Rear cover
- Seat, adjustable

- Starting motor, 7.5 kW/24V

- Steering system:
 HSS (Hydrostatic Steering System)
 Track roller guard, center and end section
- Track roller guard, end sections (EX, WX)
- Track shoe assembly
 - Heavy-Duty sealed and lubricated track
 510 mm 20" single grouser shoe (EX)
 - 560 mm 22" single grouser shoe (EX with PAT)
 760 mm 30" single grouser shoe
 - (WX)
 - 760 mm 30" single grouser shoe (PX, WX with PAT)
 915 mm 36" single grouser shoe
 - (PX)
- Underguards: oil pan and transmission heavy-duty

- Water separator
- ROPS cab*
 - Air conditioner
 - Air-conditioner intake precleaner
 - Cab accessories
 - -12V power supply
 - -Cup holder
 - —Rear view mirror
 - —Sun visor
 - * Meets ISO 3471, SAE J1040 APR88 ROPS standards, and ISO 3449 FOPS standard.



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- Air suspension seat with turn, high-back Alternator, 90 ampere/24V

- AM-FM radio
 Batteries 200 Ah/2 x 12 V
 Engine intake precleaner
 Front pull hook

- Hinged underguardsHitch type drawbar
- Hydraulics for ripper (EX, WX)
- Light working, cab additional
- Rear view monitoring system
- ROPS canopy
 Rotary bushing link track (PLUS)
 Starting motor 11.0 kW/24 V
- Suspension seat with high-back
- Tool kit
- Track roller guard, full length

Multi-shank ripper (for D65EX/WX):

SHOES

Models	Shoe	Additional weight	Ground contact area	Additional ground pressure to tractor
	560 mm 22" single-grouser shoe	+130 kg (+130 kg) +290 lb (+290 lb)	33375 cm² (33265 cm²) 5,173 in² (5,156 in²)	-4.5 kPa (-4.7 kPa) -0.05 kg/cm² (-0.05 kg/cm²) -0.66 psi (-0.68 psi)
D65EX	610 mm 24" single-grouser shoe	+250 kg (+260 kg) +550 lb (+570 lb)	36355 cm² (36235 cm²) 5,635 in² (5,616 in²)	-8.4 kPa (-8.5 kPa) -0.09 kg/cm² (-0.09 kg/cm²) -1.22 psi (-1.24 psi)
	660 mm 26" single-grouser shoe	+380 kg (+390 kg) +840 lb (+860 lb)	39335 cm² (39205 cm²) 6,097 in² (6,077 in²)	-11.6 kPa (-11.8 kPa) -0.12 kg/cm² (-0.12 kg/cm²) -1.68 psi (-1.72 psi)
D65PX	940 mm 37" circular-arc shoe	+30 kg +70 lb	61760 cm² 9,573 in²	-0.8 kPa -0.01 kg/cm² -0.11 psi

() ... PLUS spec

www.Komatsu.com

Printed in Japan 201404 IP.SIN

KOMATSU®



STANDARD EQUIPMENT FOR BASE MACHINE

- · Air cleaner, double element with dust indicator
- · Alternator, 35 ampere/24V
- · Batteries, 140 Ah/2 x 12V
- · Blower cooling fan
- · Decelerator pedal
- · Engine hood
- Fenders
- · Lighting system, (includes 2 front, 1 rear)
- · Mono-lever steering
- · Muffler with curved exhaust pipe
- · Radiator guard door, flat · Radiator reserve tank
- · Rear cover
- · ROPS mounting brackets
- Starting motor, 7.5 kW/24V
- · Seat, adjustable
- · Track roller guard, end sections
- · Track shoe assembly -Sealed and lubricated track
 - . 510 mm 20° single grouser shoe
- · Underguards, oil pan and transmission
- · Wet, multiple-disc steering clutch/blake



- · Air conditioner
- · Backup alarm
- · Cab
- · Cab accessories
- -Cup holder
- -Rear view mirror · Cooling fan, reversible
- · Electronic instrument monitor panel
- · Engine side covers, gull-wing
- · Front pull hook
- · Heater and defroster
- · Hitch type drawbar

ROPS CANOPY

- · Additional weight 420 kg 930 lb
- Meets ISO 3471 and SAE J1040 APR88. ROPS standards, and ISO 3449 FOPS standard.
- · Roof dimensions:
- -Length: 1830 mm 6'0"
- -- Width: 1600 mm 5'3"
- -Height from operator compartment floor: 1700 mm 57"

- · High mount foot rests
- Hydraulics for ripper
- · Hydraulics for tilt dozer
- · Intake pipe with precleaner
- · Light working, cab additional
- · Locks, filler caps and covers
- · Pressure check ports for power train
- · Radiator core protective grid
- · Rigid type drawbar
- ROPS canopy
- · ROPS canopy with sweep
- · Seat belt, retractable

STEEL CAB

- . Additional weight 285 kg 630 lb
- · All-weather, enclosed pressurized cab · Dimensions:
- -Length: 1765 mm 5'9"
- -Width: 1720 mm 58"
- -Height: 1625 mm 5'4" -Height from floor to celling:
- 1515 mm 50°

- · Suspension seat, with high-back
- · Suspension seat, reclining with fabric material (cab only)
- · Track roller guard, full length
- · Underguard, heavy-duty
- · Vandalism protection cover for instrument panel
- Water separator

MULTI-SHANK RIPPER

- · Additional weight (including hydraulic control unit): 1680 kg 3,700 lb
- Beam length: 2170 mm 7'1"
- Maximum digging depth: 595 mm 1'11"
- Maximum lift above ground: 640 mm 2"1"

ROPS CANOPY FOR CAB

- · Additional weight 340 kg 750 lb
- Meets ISO 3471 and SAE J1040 APR88. ROPS standards, and ISO 3449 FOPS standard.
- · Roof dimensions:
- -Length: 1270 mm 4'2" -Width: 1490 mm 4"11"
- -Height from operator compartment floor: 1705 mm 57*

SHOES

Shoe	Additional weight	Ground contact area
560 mm 22.0" single-grouser shoe	+120 kg +260 lb	33380 cm ² 5,170 in ²
610 mm 24.0° single-grouser shoe	+230 kg +510 lb	36360 cm ² 5,640 in ²
660 mm 26.0" single-grouser	+360 kg +790 lb	39340 cm² 6,100 in²

www.Komatsu.com

Printed in Japan 201005 IPAD (05)



CEN00163-02 Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. KOMAYSU is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

HORSEPOWER

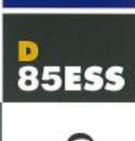
Net: 149 kW 200 HP @ 1950 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT 20670 kg 45,570 lb

KOMATSU

D85ESS-2A

WITH STEERING CLUTCH/BRAKE SYSTEM





WALK-AROUND

The Komatsu S6D125E-2 diesel engine provides an output of 149 kW 200 HP with excellent productivity.

Left hand joystick controls all tractor motion. Right hand joystick controls all blade movements. Electronic monitoring system prevents minor problems from developing into major ones. (optional)

> Optional hexagonal, low noise cab with viscous damping mounts provides unsurpassed operator comfort and visibility.

HORSEPOWER Net: 149 kW 200 HP @ 1950 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

20670 kg 45,570 lb

BLADE CAPACITY (SAE) Straight Tilt Dozer: 4.4 m³ 5.8 yd³ Angle Dozer: 3.4 m³ 4.4 yd³



Wet, multiple-disc brakes

eliminates brake-band adjustments for maintenance-free operation.

Komatsu Torqflow transmission

offers single lever control of speed (3 forward and 3 reverse) and directional changes.

Forward mounted **pivot shafts** isolate final drives from blade loads.

Modular power train for increased serviceability and durability.

Bolt-on segmented sprocket teeth

for easy in-the-field replacement

Photo may include optional equipment.

OPERATOR'S COMPARTMENT

All steering, direction, and speed changes are made by a left-hand single joystick control. If the operator wants to move the machine forward and to the left, he simply moves the joystick forward and to the left. If he desires a gear change, he merely twists his wrist. The machine responds to the movement of the lever providing the operator with the feeling of natural control with Komatsu's joystick.

Low-noise design

For smoother riding comfort, power train components and hydraulic control valves are mounted to the frame with rubber pads to soften vibration and shut out noise. Since the DB5ESS employs joysticks, the walk-through operator compartment is uncluttered for smooth entry and exit. An adjustable seat with backrest is standard equipment.

Three-stage height adjustable armrests

Three-stage height adjustable armrests and relocated fuel control lever provide

comfortable operation and increased leg space.



Blade Steering functions functions Litting and Forward and Tilting First to second. so third shifting Right Hand

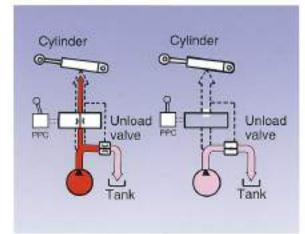
Easy-to-operate work equipment control lever

With the Closed-center Load Sensing (CLSS) hydraulic system, blade lever stroke is directly proportional with blade speed, regardless of the load and travel speed. This results in superb, fine controllability.

Benefits of CLSS

- · More precise and responsive operation due to the pressure compensation valve.
- Reduced fuel consumption by discharging only the required amount of oil from the pump,
- · The work equipment moves smoothly for operations such as side-cutting even when priority is given to steering.

CLSS for D85ESS-2A



Air filters and a higher internal air pressure combine to

Hexagonal pressurized cab (optional)

prevent external dust from entering the cab. In addition, the cab's hexagonal design provides excellent front, side, and rear visibility. The viscous damper cab suspension softens shocks for operator comfort and extends component life.



Electronic monitoring system (optional)

An electronic monitoring system prevents minor problems from developing into major ones. All meters and gauges are controlled by a microcomputer, which provides a wide indication range for an easier, more precise reading.



RELIABILITY FEATURES

Field-proven engine

Powerful S6D125E-2 diesel engine provides a massive output of 149 kW 200 HP. The engine power is transmitted smoothly to the final drives via a high-efficiency torque converter.

Modular designed power train units

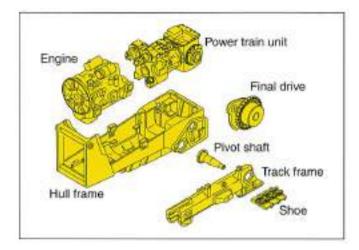
The modular design allows easy removal and installation of any individual unit for shorter downtime.

Flat bottom frame

A flat bottom frame, the monocoque track frames and forward-mounted pivot shafts provide good maneuverability in muddy terrain by preventing mud from building up under the frame.

Sturdy design

Because fewer components mean greater reliability, we've designed a simple hull frame made of a thick, single plate. Track frames have a large-section construction for maximum rigidity. Even the box-section construction of the blade back beam is reinforced, all with durability in mind.



Tough undercarriage

Large-diameter bushings, increased track link heights, and improved oil-seals help to increase undercarriage durability. Serviceability has also been improved with the addition of remote greasing of the equalizer bar center pin.

Low drive and long track undercarriage

Kornatsu's design is extraordinarily tough and offers excellent grading ability and stability.

EASY MAINTENANCE

Wet, multiple-disc brakes

Eliminate brake-band adjustments for maintenance-free operation.



Coolant reservoir

A radiator coolant reservoir makes it easier to check the coolant level and eliminates frequent refilling.



Oil pressure check ports (optional)

Oil pressure check ports for the power train are centralized on the right hand side of the operator platform for easy access.



Gull-wing engine side covers (optional)

A gas-spring cylinder opens the gull-wing engine side covers widely, allowing the engine and auxiliary components to be easily checked.



SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Model
Type 4-stroke cycle, water-cooled, direct injection
Aspiration Turbocharged
Number of cylinders
Bore x stroke
Piston displacement
Governor All-speed, mechanical
Horsepower
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349 Net 149kW 200HP
Rated rpm
Fan drive type
Lubrication system
Method
Filter Full-flow

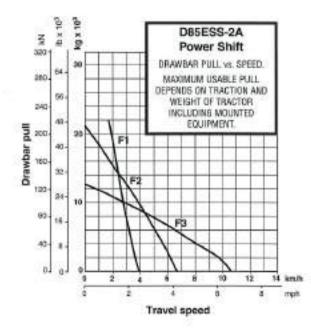
Net maximum torque. 981 N•m 100 kg•m 723 lb ft @ 1200 rpm



TORQFLOW TRANSMISSION

Komatsu's TORQFLOW transmission consists of a water-cooled, 3-element, 1-stage, 1-phase torque converter and a planetary gear, multiple-disc clutch transmission which is hydraulically actuated and force-lubricated for optimum heat dissipation. Joystick control of gears (3 forward and 3 reverse) and directional steering changes. Gearshift lock lever and neutral safety switch prevent machine from accidental starts.

Travel speed	Forward	Reverse	
1st	0-3.9 km/h 0-2.4 mph	0-5.0 km/h 0-3.1 mph	
2nd	0-6.8 km/h 0-4.2 mph	0-8.6 km/h 0-5.3 mph	
3rd	0-10.6 km/h 0-6.6 mph	0-13.4 km/h 0-8.3 mph	





Double-reduction final drives of spur gear and planetary gears to minimize transmission of shocks to power train components. Segmented sprocket are bolt-on for easy in-the-field replacement.



STEERING SYSTEM

Joystick controls for all directional movements. Pushing the joystick forward results in forward machine travel, while pulling it rearward reverses the machine. Simply tilt the joystick to the left to make a left turn. Tilt it to the right for a right turn.

Wet, multiple-disc steering clutches are hydraulically loaded and hydraulically released. Wet, multiple-disc brakes are spring-actuated and hydraulically released.



UNDERCARRIAGE

Suspension	Oscillation with equalizer be
Suspension (Oscillation with equalizer ba and forward mounted pivot shafts
Track roller frame	Monocoque, large section
many terral many a	durable construction
Track shoes	Lubricated tracks. Unique dust seals
	for preventing entry of foreign abrasives into
	pin-to-bushing clearances for extended service
	Track tension is easily adjusted with a grease gun
Number of carrier	rollers (each side)
Number of track ro	ollers (each side)
	ea
Ground pressure .	



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILL)

Coolant	13.7 U.S. gal
Fuel tank	107.3 U.S. gal
Engine oil	10.0 U.S. gal
Damper	0.4 U.S. gal
Transmission, bevel gear,	
and steering system	12.7 U.S. gal
Final drive (each side)	7.1 U.S. gal



OPERATING WEIGHT

Tractor weight:

Operating weight



HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Closed-center load sensing system (CLSS) designed for precise and responsive control, and for efficient simultaneous operation.

Hydraulic control units:

All spool control valves externally mounted beside the hydraulic tank. Type of pump:

Gear pump

	Number of cylinders	Bore
Blade lift	2	95 mm 3.74"
Blade tilt	1	140 mm 5.51*
Ripper lift	1	140 mm 5.51*

Control valves:

Hydraulic oil capacity (refilling):

 Straight tilt dozer.
 55.0 ltr 14.5 U.S. gal

 Angle tilt dozer.
 55.0 ltr 14.5 U.S. gal

 Multi-shank ripper.
 55.0 ltr 14.5 U.S. gal



DOZER EQUIPMENT

Use of high tensile strength steel in moldboard for strengthened blade construction.

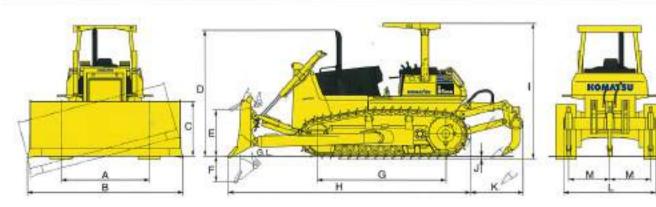
	Overall	1940057	2000	Table 1000 Contact	Maximum	Maximum	\$100000°	Additional weight	
	length blade capacity* le	Blade length x height	length a height shows meaned	drop below ground	tilt adjustment	Angling angle	Dozer equipment	Hydraulic control unit	
AngleDazer	5930 mm 19'5"	3.4 m ³ 4.4 yd ³	4370 mm x 1070 mm 14'4" x 3'6"	1255 mm 4'1"	485 mm 1'7"	400 mm. 1'4'	25 degree	2890 kg 6,370 lb	540 kg 1,190 lb
Straight Tilt Dozer	5615 mm 18'5"	4.4 m ² 5.8 yd ²	3620 mm x 1295 mm 11'11' x 4'3"	1070 mm 3'6'	590 mm 1'11"	460 mm 1'6'	=	2220 kg 4,890 lb	590 kg 1,300 lb
Semi-U Tilt Dozer	5770 mm 18'11'	6.8 m ³ 8.9 yd ³	3640 mm x 1565 mm 11'11' x 5'2'	1070 mm 3'5'	590 mm 1'11'	460 mm 1'6'	8	2520 kg 5,560 lb	590 kg 1,300 lb

Romarks

Blade capacities are based on the SAE recommendation practice J1265.



DIMENSIONS



Dimension with straight filt dozer and multi-shank ripper.

A	2050 mm 6'9'	H	5615 mm	185
В	3620 mm 11'11'	18	3160 mm	10'4"
C	1295 mm 4'3"	J	65 mm	2.6"
D	2980 mm 9'9"	K	1220 mm	40
E	1070 mm 3'6"	L.	2170 mm	711*
F	590 mm 1'11"	M	950 mm	31"
6	2980 mm 9'9'	70 10		970



- Air cleaner, double element with dust indicator
- Alternator, 60 ampere
- Backup alarm
- Batteries, 2 x 12V 170 Ah
- Blower cooling fan
- Color monitor
- Decelerator pedal
- Electric priming pump
- FendersHorn, warning

- Hydraulics for dozer
- Lighting system (includes 2 front, 1 rear)
- Muffler with rain cap
- Open ROPS
- Palm lever steering control
- Radiator with reserve tank
- Rear cover
- Starting motor, 11kW/24V
- Suspension seat
- Track roller guard, end sections

- Track shoe assembly
- Sealed and lubricated track
- Underguards, oil pan and transmission
- 560 mm 22" single grouser shoe



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ROPS cab

- Additional weight: 430 kg 948 lb
- All-weather, enclosed pressurized cab
- Dimensions:
 - -Length: 1735 mm 5'8"
 - —Width: **1755 mm** 5'9"
- —Height from floor: 1635 mm 5'4"
- Meets ISO 3471, SAE J/ISO 3471 ROPS standards, and ISO 3449 FOPS standard.

Variable multi-shank ripper

- Additional weight (including hydraulic control unit): 3760 kg 8,290 lb
- Beam length: 2320 mm 7'7"
- Hydraulically-controlled parallelogram-type ripper with three shanks.
 Digging angle infinitely adjustable.
 Standard digging angle: 45°
- Maximum digging depth: 900 mm 2'11"
- Maximum lift above ground: 950 mm 3'1"

Variable giant ripper

- Additional weight (including hydraulic control unit): 3380 kg 7,450 lb
- Beam length: 1410 mm 4'8"
- Hydraulically-controlled parallelogram-type ripper with one shank.
 Digging angle infinitely adjustable.
 Standard digging angle: 45°
- Maximum digging depth: 1370 mm 4'6"
- Maximum lift above ground: 945 mm 3'1"

Shoes

Shoes (optional)	Additiona	l weight	Ground conta	ct area
560 mm 22" single-grouser shoes	-0 kg	-0 lb	35280 cm ²	5,468 in ²
610 mm 24" single-grouser shoes	+200 kg	+440 lb	38430 cm ²	5,957 in ²
660 mm 26" single-grouser shoes	+410 kg	+900 lb	41580 cm ²	6,445 in ²
710 mm 28" single-grouser shoes	+610 kg	+1,340 lb	44730 cm ²	6,933 in ²
560 mm 22" extreme service shoes	+450 kg	+990 lb	35280 cm ²	5,468 in ²
610 mm 24" extreme service shoes	+690 kg	+1,520 lb	38430 cm ²	5,957 in ²
660 mm 26" extreme service shoes	+920 kg	+2,030 lb	41580 cm²	6,445 in ²

Othe

- Air conditioner
- Cab heater and defroster
- Engine side cover
- Large pre-cleaner
- Locks, filler caps and covers
- Rear view monitoring system
- Rigid drawbarTool kit

- 100

SIGMADOZER

	Overall length with dozer	Blade capacity	Blade length x height		Maximum drop below ground		Additional weight
SIGMADOZER	6125 mm	9.4 m ³	4060 mm x 1850 mm	1320 mm	617 mm	920 mm	4940 kg
	20'1"	12.3 yd ³	13'4" x 6'1"	4'4"	2'	3'	10,890 lb
Strengthened	6125 mm	9.4 m ³	4060 mm x 1850 mm	1320 mm	617 mm	920 mm	5360 kg
SIGMADOZER	20'1"	12.3 yd ³	13'4" x 6'1"	4'4"	2'	3'	11,820 lb



www.Komatsu.com

CEN00255-02

Printed in Japan 200905 IP.SIN.AD (10)



Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice **KOMAT'SU** is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan

®

KOMATSU®

D155A-6



Gross: 268 kW 360 HP @ 1900 rpm **Net: 264 kW** 354 HP @ 1900 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT 41700 kg 91,930 lb

BLADE CAPACITY

Semi-U DOZER: 9.4 m³ 12.3 yd³

D 155A





D155A-6

HORSEPOWER Gross: 268 kW 360 HP @ 1900 rpm

Net: 264 kW 354 HP @ 1900 rpm **OPERATING WEIGHT**

41700 kg 91,930 lb

BLADE CAPACITY

Semi-U DOZER: 9.4 m3 12.3 yd3

WALK-AROUND

Large blade capacity:

9.4 m³ 12.3 yd³ (Semi-U dozer) and **11.9 m³** 15.6 yd³ (U dozer) See page 4.

Automatic transmission increases

speed and power to improve productivity. See page 4.

SAA6D140E-5 turbocharged after**cooled diesel engine** provides an output of 264 kW 354 HP with excellent productivity. See page 5.

Hydraulic drive radiator **cooling fan** controlled

automatically, reduces fuel consumption and operating noise levels. See page 5.

Gull-wing engine side **COVETS** for easy and efficient

engine servicing. See page 8.

Blade tilt lines

completely protected. See page 8.

Low drive, rugged undercarriage

outstanding durability even traveling over severe rocky terrain.

See page 5.

PCCS (Palm Command Control System)

- Electronic controlled PCCS travel control
- Hydraulic controlled PCCS blade/ripper control
- Fuel control dial
- Automatic/manual gearshift selectable mode
- Gearshift pattern preset function
- ECMV (Electronic Controlled Modulation Valve) controlled transmission

See page 6.

New integrated ROPS cab includes:

- Large quiet operator environment
- Comfortable ride with new cab damper
- Excellent visibility without ROPS post
- Two-position seat
- High capacity air conditioning system (optional)
- Pressurized cab (optional)
- Adjustable armrests and suspension seat (optional)

See page 7.

Large TFT LCD monitor

• Easy-to-see and use 7" large multi-color monitor



Extra-low machine profile provides excellent machine balance and low center of gravity.

Wet disc brakes require less maintenance. See page 8.

Filtration

Further enhanced reliability of the machine against fuel contamination thanks to the improvement in filtration. See page 9.

Modular power train for increased serviceability and durability. Forward mounted pivot shafts isolate final drives from blade loads. See page 8.

High-rigidity, simple hull frame and monocogue track frame with pivot shaft for greater reliability.

See page 8.

Photo may include optional equipment.

Rippers (optional):

- Variable multi-shank
- Variable giant

Newly designed ripper offers excellent ripper visibility and dynamic ripping operation. See page 4.

D155A-6 CRAWLER DOZER CRAWLER DOZER

PRODUCTIVITY FEATURES

Automatic transmission with torque converter

Greater power train efficiency is achieved by the new automatic gearshift transmission. The automatic gearshift transmission selects the optimal gear range depending on the working conditions and load placed on the machine. This means the machine is always operating at maximum efficiency. (Manual gearshift mode is selectable with a switch)

Automatic/manual gearshift selectable mode

Automatic or manual gearshift modes can be selected with ease to suit the work at hand by simply pressing the switch on the multi-monitor (selection at neutral).

• Automatic gearshift mode

The mode for general dozing. When a load is applied, the gear automatically shifts down, and when the load is off, it automatically shifts up to a set maximum gear speed. This mode automatically selects the optimum gear speed.

• Manual gearshift mode

The mode for dozing and ripping rough ground. When loaded, the gear automatically shifts down, but does not shift up when the load is off.



Large blade capacity

Capacity of **9.4 m³** 12.3 yd³ (Semi-U dozer) and **11.9 m³** 21.7 yd³ (U dozer) yield outstanding production. Hightensile-strength steel is incorporated into the front and sides of the blade for increased durability.

Ripper performance

Ripper cylinders are reduced from four to two, greatly improving rear visibility during ripping.

Also, expanded ripper movement offers a wider range of operation.



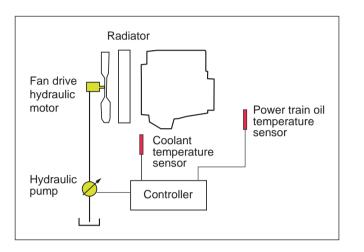
Engine

Fuel-efficient electronic controlled engine

The Komatsu SAA6D140E-5 engine delivers **264 kW** 354 HP at 1900 rpm. The fuel-efficient, powerful Komatsu engine makes the D155A superior in both ripping and dozing operations. The engine is turbocharged and features direct fuel injection and air-to-air aftercooling to maximize power. To minimize noise and vibration, the engine is mounted to the main frame with rubber cushions.

Hydraulic driven engine cooling fan

Fan rotation is automatically controlled depending on coolant and hydraulic oil temperature, saving fuel consumption and providing great productivity with a quiet operating environment.



Undercarriage

Field-proven low-drive, rigid type undercarriage

Komatsu's unique low-drive undercarriage features less shoe slippage compared with other types of undercarriage. The undercarriage follows the ground firmly for increased drawbar pull. Large strengthened shoes have been proven to be highly durable in various job sites all over the world.

Length of track on ground: 3150 mm (10'4")



CONTROL FEATURES



Human-Machine Interface PCCS (Palm Command Control System)

Komatsu's ergonomically designed control system "PCCS" creates an operating environment with "complete operator control."

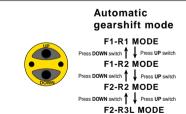
Palm command electronic controlled travel control joystick

Palm command travel joystick provides the operator with a relaxed posture and superb fine control. Transmission gear shifting is simplified with thumb push buttons.



Gearshift pattern preset function

When the gearshift pattern is set to either <F1-R2>, <F2-R2> or <F2-R3L> in automatic gearshift mode, the gear is automatically shifted, reducing round trip repetition work time and operator's efforts.



Manual gearshift mode		
F1-R1 MODE Press DOWN switch ↑ ↓ Press UP switch F1-R2 MODE Press DOWN switch ↑ ↓ Press UP switch F2-R2 MODE		

ECMV (Electronic Controlled Modulation Valve) controlled transmission and brakes

Controller automatically adjusts each clutch engagement depending on travel conditions, providing smooth shockless clutch engagement, improved component life and operator ride comfort.

Palm command PPC controlled blade/ripper control joystick

Blade control joystick uses a PPC (Proportional Pressure

Control) valve and blade control joystick ergonomics are similar to the travel control joystick.

PPC control combined with the highly reliable Komatsu hydraulic system enables superb fine control.



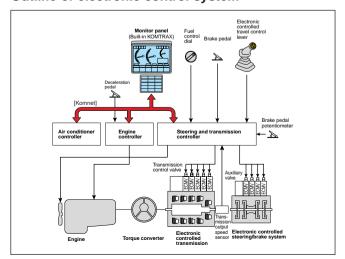
Fuel control dial

Engine revolution is controlled by an electronic signal, providing ease of operation, eliminating maintenance of linkage and joints.

Height adjustable armrest (Optional)

Armrest is height adjustable without any tools, providing the operator with firm arm support.

Outline of electronic control system



WORKING ENVIRONMENT





New integrated ROPS cab (Optional)

A newly designed cab is integrated with ROPS. High rigidity and superb sealing performance sharply reduce noise and vibration for the operator and helps prevent dust from entering the cab. The result is relaxed operation in a comfortable environment for the operator. In addition, side visibility is increased because external ROPS structure and posts are not required. Outstanding visibility has been achieved.

Large multi-lingual LCD color monitor

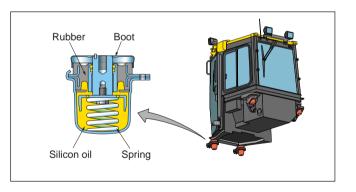
A large user-friendly color monitor enables, accurate and smooth work. Improved screen visibility is achieved by use of TFT liquid crystal display that can easily be read at various angles and lighting conditions. Simple and easy to operate switches. Industry first function keys facilitate multifunction operations.

Display data in 10 languages to globally support operators around the world.



Comfortable ride with cab damper mounting

The D155A-6's cab mount uses a cab damper which provides excellent shock and vibration absorption capacity with its long stroke. Cab damper mounts soften shocks and vibration while traveling over adverse conditions, which conventional mounting systems are unable to absorb. The cab damper spring isolates the cab from the machine body, suppressing vibration and providing a quiet, comfortable operating environment.



MAINTENANCE FEATURES

Preventative maintenance

Preventative maintenance is the only way to ensure long service life from your equipment. That's why Komatsu designed the D155A-6 with conveniently located maintenance points to make necessary inspections and maintenance quick and easy.

Multi-monitor with troubleshooting function to keep operator informed

Various meters, gauges, and warning functions are centrally arranged on the multi-monitor. Offers ease of start-up inspection and promptly warns the operator with a lamp and buzzer if any abnormalities should occur. In addition, countermeasures are indicated in 4 stage codes.

Replacement times for oil and filters are also indicated.



Easy radiator cleaning with hydraulic drive fan

The radiator can be cleaned by utilization of the reversible, hydraulically driven cooling fan. The fan can be reversed from inside the cab by simply turning the switch to reverse.

Oil pressure checking ports

Pressure checking ports for power train components are centralized to promote quick and simple diagnosis.

Gull-wing engine side covers

The opening area is further enlarged when gull-wing engine side covers are opened, facilitating engine maintenance and filter replacement. Side covers have been changed to a thick one-piece structure



with a bolt-on catch to improve durability.

Electric priming pump

Simply pressing the button enables bleeding air from the fuel circuit at the time of filter replacement, etc.

Low maintenance costs

Reliable simple hull frame

Simple hull structure main frame design increases durability and reduces stress concentration at critical areas. The monocoque track frame has a large cross section and utilizes pivot shaft mounting for greater reliability.

Sealed DT connectors

Main harnesses and controller connectors are equipped with sealed DT connectors providing high reliability, as well as water and dust resistance.

Flat face O-ring seals

Flat face O-ring seals are used to securely seal all hydraulic hose connections and to help prevent oil leakage.

Enclosed hydraulic piping

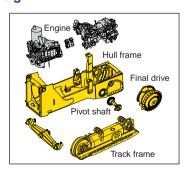
Hydraulic piping for the blade tilt cylinder is completely housed in the push arm, helping protect it from damage.

Modular power train design

Power train components are sealed in a modular design, making servicing work clean, smooth and easy.



Wet disc brakes require less maintenance.



Measures against poor quality fuel

In order to help protect the engine against dust and water contained in the fuel, the machine is equipped with an additional main fuel filter and a large water separator. In addition, fuel tank drain valve, water drain valve of the water separator and fuel drain valve are concentrated at one place.



Large water separator



Additional main fuel filter

Dust-proof measures

Large fresh air pre-cleaner is also provided as optional equipment. The hydraulic tank and the fuel tank are equipped with a high-filtration breather with pressure valve to help prevent dust from entering.



Large fresh air pre-cleaner



High-filtration breather



f 8

D155A-6 D155A-6 CRAWLER DOZER **CRAWLER DOZER**

SPECIFICATIONS



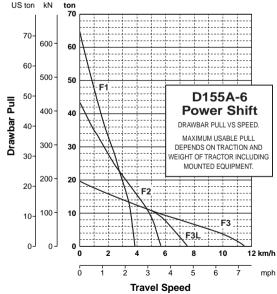
Model	cle, water-cooled, direct injection rbocharged, air-to-air aftercooled
Governor All	-speed and mid-range, electronic
Horsepower	
SAE J1995	Gross 268kW 360HP
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349*	Net 264kW 354HP
Rated rpm	1900rpm
Fan drive type	
Lubrication system	
Method	Gear pump, force lubrication
Filter	Full-flow
*Net horsepower at the maximum spee	ed of
radiator cooling fan	239kW 320HP

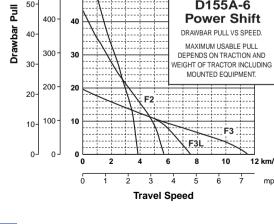


TORQFLOW TRANSMISSION

Komatsu's automatic TORQFLOW transmission consists of a watercooled, 3-element, 1-stage, 1-phase torque converter, and a planetary gear, multiple-disc clutch transmission which is hydraulically actuated and force-lubricated for optimum heat dissipation. Gearshift lock lever and neutral switch prevent machine from accidental starts.

Travel speed	Forward	Reverse
1st	3.9 km/h 2.4 mph	4.7 km/h 2.9 mph
2nd	5.7 km/h 3.5 mph	6.8 km/h 4.2 mph
3rd L	7.5 km/h 4.7 mph	9.2 km/h 5.7 mph
3rd	11.4 km/h 7.1 mph	13.7 km/h 8.5 mph







Double-reduction, spur and planetary final drives increase tractive effort. Segmented sprockets are bolt-on for easy in-the-field replacement.



STEERING SYSTEM

PCCS lever controls for all directional movements. Pushing the PCCS lever forward results in forward machine travel, while pulling it rearward reverses the machine. Simply tilt the PCCS lever to the left to make a left turn. Tilt it to the right for a right turn.

Wet, multiple-disc, pedal-controlled service brakes are springactuated and hydraulically released. Gearshift lock lever also applies parking brakes.



UNDERCARRIAGE

Suspension	Oscillation-type with equalizer bar
	and forward mounted pivot shafts
Track roller frame	Monocoque, high-tensile-
	strength steel construction

Track shoes

Lubricated tracks. Unique dust seals for helping prevent entry of foreign abrasives into pin-to-bushing clearance for extended service. Track tension easily adjusted with grease gun.

Number of shoes (each side)	41
Grouser height	
Shoe width (standard/maximum) 56	10 mm 22"/ 710 mm 28"
Ground contact area	35280 cm² 5,468 in ²
Ground pressure (tractor only) 90.2 ki	Pa 0.92 kg/cm ² 13.1 psi
Number of track rollers (each side)	
Number of carrier rollers (each side)	



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILL)

Fuel tank 625 Itr	165 U.S. gal
Coolant	21.7 U.S. gal
Engine oil	9.8 U.S. gal
Damper	0.4 U.S. gal
Transmission, bevel gear	
and steering system 90 ltr	23.8 U.S. gal
Final drive (each side)	8.2 U.S. gal

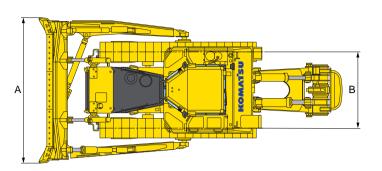


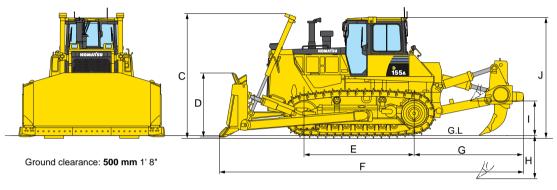
OPERATING WEIGHT

Tractor weight	,200 lb
Including rated capacity of lubricant, coolant, full fuel tank,	
operator and standard equipment	



Α	4130 mm	13'7"
В	2140 mm	7'
С	3510 mm	11'6"
D	1790 mm	5'10"
Е	3150 mm	10'4"
F	8680 mm	28'6"
G	3100 mm	10'2"
Н	1370 mm	4'6"
Π	900 mm	2'11"
J	3395 mm	11'2"







HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Closed-center load sensing system (CLSS) designed for precise and responsive control, and for efficient simultaneous operation.

Hydraulic control unit:

All spool control valves externally mounted beside the hydraulic tank. Variable piston pump with capacity (discharge flow) of 200 ltr/min 52.8 U.S. gal/min for implement at rated engine rpm.

Relief valve setting . . . for implement 27.5 MPa 280 kg/cm² 3,980 psi Control valves:

00111101 14111001	
Spool control valve for Semi-U tilt doz	er and Full-U tilt dozer.
Positions: Blade lift	Raise, hold, lower, and float
Blade tilt	\ldots . Right, hold, and left

Additional control valve required for variable digging angle multi-shank ripper and giant ripper

maili sharik ripper ana gi	ant ripper.
Positions: Ripper lift	Raise, hold, and lower and floa
Ripper tilt	Increase, hold, and decrease

Hydraulic cylinders Double-acting, piston

	Number of cylinders	Bore
Blade Lift	2	110 mm 4.33"
Blade Tilt	1	160 mm 6.30"
Ripper Lift	1	180 mm 7.09"
Ripper Tilt	1	200 mm 7.87"

Hydraulic oil capacity (refill):	
Semi-U tilt dozer	22.5 U.S. gal
U-tilt dozer	22.5 U.S. gal
Ripper equipment (additional volume):	
Multi-shank ripper	9.8 U.S. gal
Giant ripper	9.8 U.S. gal



DOZER EQUIPMENT

Use of high-tensile-strength steel in moldboard for strengthened blade construction. Blade tilt hose piping is mounted inside the dozer push arm to help prevent damage.

	Overall length with dozer	Blade capacity	Blade length x height	Maximum lift above ground	Maximum drop below ground	Maximum tilt adjustment	Additional weight
Semi-U	6010 mm	9.4 m³	4130 mm x 1790 mm	1250 mm	590 mm	950 mm	4960 kg
Tilt Dozer	19'9"	12.3 yd³	13'7" x 5'10"	4'1"	1'11"	3'1"	10,940 lb
Strengthened	6010 mm	9.4 m³	4130 mm x 1790 mm	1250 mm	590 mm	950 mm	5620 kg
Semi-U Tilt Dozer	19'9"	12.3 yd³	13'7" x 5'10"	4'1"	1'11"	3'1"	12,390 lb
Full-U	6430 mm	11.9 m³	4225 mm x 1790 mm	1250 mm	590 mm	970 mm	5630 kg
Tilt Dozer	21'1"	15.6 yd³	13'10" x 5'10"	4'1"	1'11"	3'2"	12,410 lb
Angle	6580 mm	4.6 m³	4850 mm x 1170 mm	1560 mm	660 mm	520 mm	5170 kg
Dozer	21'7"	6.0 yd³	15'11" x 3'10"	5'1"	2'2"	1'8"	11,400 lb

HORSEPOWER

Grass: 337 kW 452 l+P @ 2000 rpm

Net: 335 kW 449 HP @ 2000 /pm

OPERATING WEIGHT 50850 kg 112,100 lb

KOMATSU

D275A-5R

D 275a





CRAWLER DOZER

WALK-AROUND



Building on the technology and expertise Komatsu has accumulated since establishment in 1921, GALEO presents customers worldwide with strong, distinctive image of technological innovation and exceptional value.

The GALEO brand will be employed for Komatsu's full lineup of advanced construction and mining equipment. Designed with high productivity, and environmental considerations in mind, the machines in this line raffect Komatsu's commitment to contributing to the creation of a better world.

Komatsu-integrated design

for the best value, reliability, and versatility. Hydraulics, power train, frame, and all other major components are engineered by Komatsu You get a machine whose components are designed to work together for higher production, greater reliability, and more versatility.

Hydrautic driven radiator cooling fan controlled automatically, reduces fuel consumption and operating noise levels. See page 6



Large blade capacities:

13.7 m³ 17.9 yd³ (Semi-U dozor) and 16.8 m³ 21.7 yd³ (U dozer) See page 7.

New track link design

reduces maintenance cost by making turning pins easier, with improved pin reuse. See page 9.

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 337 kW 452 HP @ 2000 rpm Net: 335 kW 449 HP @ 2000 rpm

> OPERATING WEIGHT 50950 kg 112,100 lb

BLADE CAPACITY Semi-U: 13.7 m² 17.9 yd² Full-U: 16.6 m² 21.7 yd²

New hexagonal designed cab includes:

- Spacious interior
- Comfortable ride with new cab damper mounting and K-Bogie undercarriage
- Excellent visibility
- High capacity air conditioning system (optional).
- Palm Command Central System (PCCS) lever controls.
- Optional pressurized cab
- · Adjustable armrest
- · Travel control console integrated with operator seat

See page 8.



Low-drive, long-track, seven roller undercarriage ensures outstanding grading ability and stability.

Track shoe stip control system (option) See page 7. **K-Bogie undercarriage system** improves traction, component durability and operator comfort. See page 6.

PALM COMMAND CONTROL SYSTEM (PCCS)

Komatsu's ergonomically designed control system "PCCS" creates an operating environment with "complete operator control?"

Human-machine interface

Palm command electronic controlled travel control loystick

Palm command travel joyslick provides the operator with a relaxed posture and superb tine control. Transmission gear shifting is simplified with thumb push buttons.

Left-hand joystick



Full-adjustable suspension seat and travel control console

For improved rear visibility during reverse operations, the operator can adjust seal 15' to the right. The transmission and steering controls move with the seat for optimum operator comfort. The mavel control console also has adjustment fore and aft, and height. The armrest is independently adjustable up and down, providing optimum operation posture for all uperators.

Facing Front



When Turned 15°



Paim command PPC controlled blade control joystick

Blade control postick uses the Proportional Pressure Control (PPC) valve and palm command joystick similar to the travel control joystick. PPC control combined with the

highly reliable Komatsu hydraulic system enables suptiful line control. (Dual filt and pitch operation are enabled by depressing awitch with a thumb. This is available when optional dual tiff dozer is installed.)



Blade and ripper

control loystick

Fuel control dial

Engine revolution is controlled by electric signals, providing ease of operation, eliminating maintenance of linkage and joints.

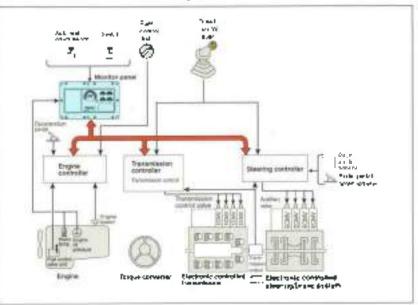
Height adjustable blade control armrest

Stade control armrest is height adjustable without any tools in three stages, providing the operator with firm arm support in an ideal armrest.

Position adjustable ripper control lever

Ripper control lever position is adjustable, providing optimum operator posture during all types of ripping operations.

Qutline of electronic control system



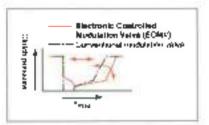
Power train electronic control system

Smooth and soft operation

D275A-SR utilizes a newty designed power train clackronic control system. The controller registers the amount of operator control (movements of ever and operation of switches) along with machine condition signals from each sensor, to calculate accurately the control of the transmission, steering clutches and brakes for optimal machine operation. The ease of operation and productivity of new D275A-SR is greatly improved through these new leatures.

Electronic Controlled Modulation Valve (ECMV) controlled transmission

Controller automatically adjusts each clutch engagement depending on travel conditions such as gear speed, revolution and shifting pattern. This provides amount shockless clutch engagement, improved component reliability, improved component life and operator ride comfort.

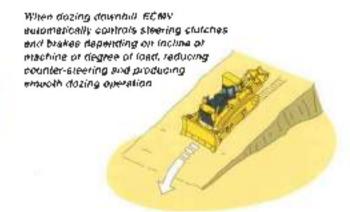


Electronic Controlled Modulation Valve (ECMV) Controlled Steering Clutches/Brakes

Sensors monitor machine operating conditions, and electronically control steering clutches and brakes depending on type of job, such as size of load during dezing, Incline angle of slope or load, providing smooth and case of operation by reducing counter-sleening on downhill travel, etc.

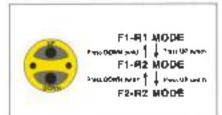
Effect of ECMV Steering Clutches/Brake Control

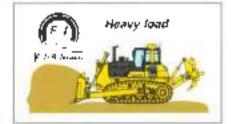
When dozing and turning, ECMV automatically controls stroke ratio of steering clutabes and brakes depending on degree of lead, enabling smooth dozing and turning.



Preset travel speed function

Preset travel speed selection function is standard equipment—enabling the operator to select fore and aft travel speed from three preset patterns; F1-R1, F1-R2 and F2-R2 by using the UP/DOWN switch. When the F1-R2 or F2-R2 preset pattern is selected and the travel control is moved into forward or reverse, the machine travels in the preset gear range automatically. This function reduces manual gear shifting frequency during machine operation, enabling the operator to focus on directional and hydraulic control. Presot travel spood selection is especially helpful when used in combination with the auto-downshift function and reduces cycle times during repealed round improperations.

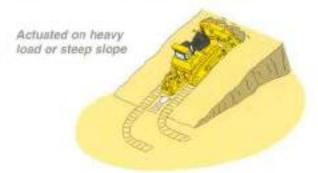






Auto downshift function

Controller monitors engine speed, travel gear and travel speed. When load is applied and machine travel speed is reduced, the controller automatically downshifts to optimum gear speed to provide high fuel efficiency. This function provides comfortable operation and high productivity without manual downshifting. (This function can be cancelled with cancel switch.)



PRODUCTIVITY FEATURES

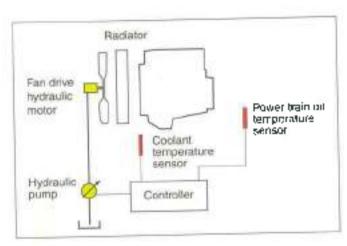


Engine

The Komatsu SAA6D14QE-5 engine delivers 335 kW 449 HP at 2000 rpm. The fuel-efficient Komatsu engine, together with the heavy machine weight, make the D275A-5H a superior crawler cozer in both ripping and dozing production. The engine features direct fuel injection, turbocharger and sir-losir attercooter to maximize fuel efficiency. To minimize noise and vibration, the engine is mounted to the main frame with rubber cushwors.

Hydraulic drive radiator cooling fan

Fan mission is automatically controlled depending on coolant and hydrautic cil temperature, saving fuel consumption and providing great productivity with a quiet operating environment.



Undercarriage

K-Bogle system

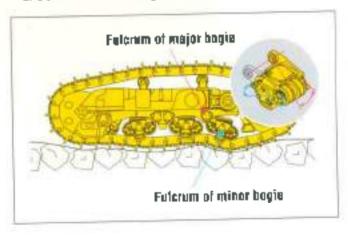
New K-Bogie undercamage system retains print advantages, with new additional features.

Current leatures:

- Effective length of hack on ground is consistent. Shoe shppage is minimized; therefore, high traction is obtained.
- The idler does not ascallate under load, providing excallent machine balance. Blade and ripper penetration force remains stable for increased productivity.

New features on Ki-Bogie undercarriage system:

- K-Boxies oscillate with two futcrums, and track roller vartical leavel is greatly increased. Impact load on all undercarnage components has been reduced and durability of components is improved since track rollers are always in contact with track link.
- Undercarriage life is improved due to better control of track chain alignment with track rollers.
- Riding comfort is improved by reducing vibration and shock when traveling over rough terrain





Large blade

Capacities of 13.7 m² 17.9 yd² (Semi-U dozer) and 16.6 m² 21.7 yd² (U dozer) yield outstanding production. High-tensitestrength steel has been incorporated into the front and sides of the blade for increased durability.

Dual tilt dozer (option)

The dual tilt dozer increases productivity while reducing operator effort

- Optimum blade cutting angle for all types of materials and grades can be selected on-the-go for increased load and production.
- Digging, dozing (carry), and dumping (spreading) are easy and smooth.
- Dozer bit angle and tilt speed are twoe that of a conventional single bit system.

Rippers

- The variable grant ripper features a long aprocket center-to-apper point distance, making ripping operation easy and effective white maintaining high penatration force.
- The variable giant ripper is a parallelogram single shank ripper ideal for ripping in tough material. The ripping engle is variable, and the depth is adjustable in three stages by a hydraulically controlled pin puller.
- The multi-sharek ripper is a hydraulically controlled parallelogram ripper with three shareks.



Track shoe slip control system (option)



Track shoe allp control panel

- Eliminates the need for the operator to constantly control engine power output with the decelerator while ripping.
- Maneuverability is improved because the operator is free to focus on the inpping application without having to monitor the track shoe slippage.
- Repair costs are significantly lowered and undercamage life is prolonged with the reduction in track
 shoe slippage.
- The track shoe slip control system will contribute to lower fuel costs, because the engine output is automatically controlled to optimum levels for operation.



WORKING ENVIRONMENT

Operator comfort

Operator comfort is essential for productive work. The D275A-5R provides a curet, comfortable environment where the operator can concentrate on the work at hand.



Hexagonal pressurized cab (optional)

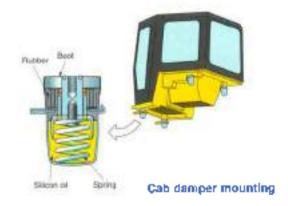
- The cab's new hexagonal design and large inted glass windows provide excellent front side, and rear visio key
- Air filters and a higher internal air pressure combine to prevent dust from entering the call.



Photo may include optional equipment.

Comfortable ride with new cab damper mounting and K-Bogle undercarriage

D275A-5B's cab mount uses a new cab damper which provides excellent shock and vibration absorption capacity with its long stroke. Cap domper mounts combined with new K-Bogie undercurriage, softens shocks and vibration white traveling over adverse conditions that are impossible to absorb with conventional cab mounting methods. The soft spring of cab damper isolates the cab from machine body, suppressing vibration and providing a quiet, comfortable operating environment.



New auspension seat

D275A-5R uses a new suspension seal. Fore and aft sliding rails and suspension spring are reinforced and play.

of joints is reduced In addition to turning lunction for ripper operation. The seaf is also littleble to facilitate down hill dozing, Air suspension seat is also available



MAINTENANCE

Preventative maintenance

Preventative maintanance is the only way to ensure long service life from your equipment. That's why Komatsu designed the D275A-5R with conveniently located maintenance points to make necessary inspections and maintenance quick and easy.

Centralized service station

To assure convenient maintenance, the transmission and HSS oil titters, power train of level gauges and hydrautic tank are arranged in the right side of the machine.



All warning and monitor lamps are lift for photo shooting.

Monitor with self-diagnostic function

With the starting switch furned QN, the monitor displays P on the display, check-before-starting and caution items appear on the lower right part of the panel. If the monitor finds abnormalities, corresponding warning lamp blinks and warning buzzer sounds. The monitor displays engine rpm and forward/leverse gear speed on the upper part of the monitor during operation. If abnormalities occur during operation, it abnormalities occur during operation, user code and service meter are displayed alternately. When a cribical user code is displayed, the caution tamp blinks and a warning buzzer sounds to provent the development of serious problems.

Enclosed hydreulic piping

Hydraulic pioing for the hlade of cylinder is completely housed in the push arm lensuring damage protection from materials.

Modular power train design

Power train components are sealed in a modular design that allows the components to be dismounted and mounted without oil spillage.

Low maintenance costs

New Track Link Design

New D275A-5R track links feature increased link tread and link height and track guiding guard shape is improved. The result is improved undercarriage Me and reduced cost through maintenance man-hours when turning pins and bushings.

Oll pressure checking ports

Pressure checking ports for power train components are centralized to promote quick and simple diagnosis.



Maintenance free disc brakes

Wal disc brakes require lass maintenance.

Enlarged engine room

Engine room space is enlarged by increasing engine hood haight, facilitating maintenance of the engine and related equipment. Perforated holes on the engine hood are discontinued, preventing dust and rain entering and to keep engine area clean.

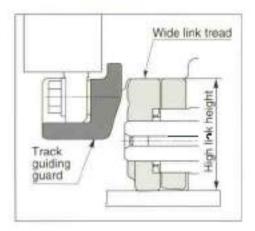
Gull-wing engine side covers

The opening area is further enlarged when gull-wing engine side covers are opened, facilitating engine maintenance and titter replacement. Side covers have been changed to a thick one-piece structure with a boll-on catch to improve durability.

Electric priming pump

Simply pressing the button enables bleeding air from the fuel circuit at the time of filter replacement, etc.





RELIABILITY FEATURES

Filtration

Engine

Newly added main five filler of 2µ and water separator protect the engine against dirt and water in the fuel





The fuel tank is equipped with a high-littration breather with pressure valve to prevent dust from ontoring.



Hydraulic

The hydrautic tank is eculoped with a high-littration breather with pressure valve to prevent dust from entening





SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

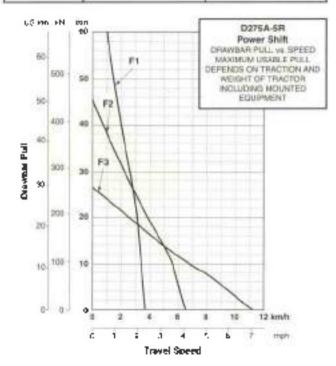
Model .	Komalsu SAA6D140E-5
Type	4-cycle, water spaids, direct injection.
Aspiration	Turnocharged, air-lo-air afternooted
Number of cylinders .	
Bore x stroke	. 140 mm x 165 mm 5 51" x 6.50"
Pieton displacement	15.24 ltn 930 in 3
Governor .	All-speed, electronic
Horsepriwer	2000
SAÉ JISS .	. Gross 337 kW 452 HP
ISO 9249 · \$4E J1349*	Net 335 kW 449 HP
Haled rpm	2300 rpm
Facilities type	
Lubrication system	
Method	Gear pump, force lubrication
Filler	Full-flow
The horsey tower at the maximum	
radiator shoring lan	206 KW 410 HP



TOROFLOW TRANSMISSION

Komalsis TOHQHLOW transmission consists of a water-couled, 3 element, 1 stage, 1 phose torque converter and a planetary gear, multiplands obtain transmission which is hydraulically actuated and torquetuhricalise for aptimum heat dissipation. Gearshift took lever and neutral safety switch prevent accidental starts.

Genr	Forward		Auv	HZ II
Işl	3.5 hm,h	2.2 mph	4.7 hm/h	2.5 mptr
Zod	6.7 km/h	4.2 mph	8.7 hm/h	5.4 mph
3rd	11.2 Pm/h	i () mph	14.9 km/h	9.3 mph





Obultin reduction final drive of spun and planetary goar sets to increase tractive effort and reduce goar both stresses for long linal drive life. Segmented sprocket rims are both on for easy replacement.



STEERING SYSTEM

PCCS lever controls for all unrectional involvements. Pushing the PCCS lever forward results in forward machine travel, white pulling it rearward reverses the machine. Simply lift the PCCS lever to left to make a left turn.

PCCS lever, joystick comtrolled wet multiple-disc steering disches, hydrautically toaded and hydrautically released. Wet into tiple-disc, pedat/lever controlled steering brakes are spring leaded hydrautically roleased and require no adjustment. Steering clutches and brakes are interconnected for easy, responsive steering.



UNDERCARRIAGE

Suspension	Oscillating equalizer bar and pwot shaft.
Track roller harne	Cylindrical high-tensile-strength
	steet construction
Rollers and inters	Lulyicated track rollors

K-Bogie undercarriage

Libricated track rollers are residently incomted to the roller frame with a series of K-Buyles whose oscillating motion is cushomed by rubber peaks.

Extreme service track shoes

Lubricated tracks. Unique seals prevent entry of foreign abhasive material into pin to bushing clearances to provide extended service tile. Track tension is passly adjusted with grease quint.

Number of shoes (each side)	39
Grouse: height.	
Single grouser	88 mm 3.5°
Shoe wicth (slandard)	610 mm 241
Ground contact area	12456 6412 6 580 inc
Ground pressure (tractor only) . 87 3 kPa t) 89 kg/cm² 12.7 psi
Number of Irack rollers	
Number of carrier rollers	2

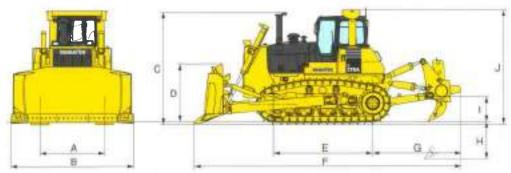
Exhame service shook	Additional maight	Ground contact area	Ground pressure
710 mm 281	57 0 kg 1,260 lb	49416 cm² 7 659 ni	102 kPa 1,04 kg/cm² 14,8 ps/
780 mm 850 kg 301 1,870 lb		62.896 cm² 9642 nx	96 kPs 0.98 kg/cm² 13.9 gs/



Fuel tank	. 840 H	222 U S gal
Coolant	100 M	r ⊋64 USgal
Engre	. 52.0 ■	r 13,7 U.S. gal
Torque porvertar fransmission.		
bayal gaer, end steering system	. 90 P	r 23 e U.S. gali
Final drive (each side).	40 ■	r III € II S gal



SEMI-U DOZER WITH GIANT RIPPER



Ground Clearance, 507 mm, 1/81

A	2261 mm 7 51	F	9290 mm 30161	
В	4300 mm 14 11	G	3050 mm 10'0'	
C	3915 mm 12 10*	н	1420 nm ± 8"	
n	1964 mm 6.51		1195 him 3'11'	
:	3480 mm 11 51	J	3990 him 13 11	





HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Closed-center Load Sensing System (CLSS) designed for prodise and desponsive control, and for officient simultaneous operation.

Hydraulic control units:

All sphot valves externally mounted beads the hydraulic tank. Plunger type hydraulic pump with capacity (discharge flow) of **230 finitions** 60,8 U.S. gal/min at rated engine rpm

Positions Report III. Raise, hold and lower Report II. Increase, hold, and decrease

	Number of cylinders	Bore
Brade lift	2	120 mm 4 72
Brade 100	1	180 mm 7 091
Aipper lift	2	180 mm 7 091
Ripper bilt	2	160 mm 6 301

D275A-SR CRAWLER DOZER



DOZER EQUIPMENT

Blade capacities are based on the SAE recommended practice u1265,

	Dverall			Maximum	Magiroum	Mammum	Weight		
	fenyth with dozer	eapacity	Blada Sength I. Melgiri	Uti above to be special to the speci	drop below ground	tij) Inemisujbs	Dozer equipment	Hydraulic osi	Ground pressure*
Semi-Urbb	5930 mm	13.7 m²	4300 mm s 1966 mm	1450 mm	549 mm	#000 mpm	1478 mp	29 log	#14 kPm
dozen	77 ST	17.9 /d²	1111 = 5151	4.91	2111	3 %	16,490 lb	64 lt	1,2(leg//zm): 17,1 ps)
L lif daggi	72 65 mm 23 101	16.6 m² 21.7 yd'	4693 mm a 1973 mm 1572 = 5767	1450 ptm a 91	2111	1070 eym 3 6	8404 Ap 18,580 to	29 leg 64 IF	120 kPa 1,22 kg/rm2 1 (13 ps
Dool 6k	6900 mm	13.7 m²	4300 mm a 1966 mm	1454 mm	\$40 mm	1140 dam	7555 kg	35 log	11# kPm
Sem 40 coa a r	22%**	17.9 /d²	14:11 x 5:51	491	201	3.9	16,660 lb	77 lb	1,20 kg/cm* 17;1 ps
Dust bit	7265 mm	10.0 m²	46% mm × 1973 mm	1454 mm	\$4\$ mm.	1220 mm	8484 kg	35 log	120 kPm
U dever	22101	21.7 yd²	15% × 5.61	4'9'	2 t	4 0	13,700 lp	77 lp	1,20 kg/rm² 17,3 ps

Results processes are expected, eat; BOPS, operator, giant's pper standard aggregation and applicable blade.



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

- Alternator 75 ampere/24V
- Backup alarm.
- Batteries 170 An/2 x 12V
- Bloweritan
- Decelerator pedal.
- Dry-type air cleaner with dust evacuator and dust indicator
- Healing priming pump.
- Final drive case wear guard.
- Hinged front mask

- Hinged underguard with front put Nook
- Hydrautic track acjusters
- Lighting system (notating four front and two rear tights)
- Muffler with rain cap
- Palm laver steering control.
- Perforated sade covers
- · Radiator reserve tank
- ROPS brackets
- Segmented sprockets

- Seven-rotter track frames
- Siroes, 610 mm; 24" extreme service, single-grouser
- Starting motors 11 kW/24 V
- Suspension seat.
- TORQFLOW transmissions
- Torque converter
- Track roller guarda
- Warning norm.
- Well steering dutches/brakes

ROPS:

Dimensions

Wdit 1980 mm 6'6"

Height From

compartment floor , , 1835 mm 6'0"

Meets (50.347), and 5AF J430 3471 BOPS standards

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- Au conditional with healer and detroaler
- Allemaior 90 ampere/24 V
- Bartleries 200 An/2 x 12V
- Counterweight
- Cush on push block
- Duel tilt dozer
- Fire emingulation
- High
- Hydraulics for hoper
- Light for rippor point
- Mirror, rearriew
- 5leel cab: "

Weight . 455 kg 1,000 lb

Dimensions

Length 1790 mm 6 10° W-dth (466 mm 49°

Height from compartment

Hoor to ceiting , 1530 mm 5'0" "Meets ISO 3449 FOPS standard.

- Panel cover
- Perforated sungle radiator mask
- Pusher plate
- Radio, slereo
- 5ea

Air suspension seat Suspension seat

- —Fatric seat
- —Fabric sear, high backrest
- · Sear belt
- Mutil-shank repper:

Hydrautically controlled parallelogram ripper with three shanks Pupping angle available stepless adjustable.

Weight (including hydraulic)

- Shoes:
 - -710 mm 281
 - -760 mm 30"
- Spill guard for Semi-U dozen
- Spill guard for U dozer
- Strengthened Semi-U blace
- Strengthenad III blade
- Sun visor
- Track shoe slip control system
- Vandalism protection kit.

Variable grant ripper:

Variable inarallelogram single-shank ripper ideal for ripping up tough material. Supping angle is variable. Apping depth is adjustable in three stages by a hydraulically controlled pin puller.

Weight (including hydrautic

www.Komatsu.com

Printed in Japan 200701 IPAD (10)





HORSEPOWER

44.1 kW 60 HP @ 1900 rpm

OPERATING WEIGHT

7050 kg

PC71





Photos may include optional equipment.

HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR

PC71 HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR PC71

WALK-AROUND

HORSEPOWER 44.1 kW 60 HP @ 1900 rpm

> OPERATING WEIGHT 7050 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY 0.09 - 0.35 m³

Autodecel Function

Reduces engine rpm after more than 4 seconds of idling.



C71 HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR PC71

ADVANCED HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

The PC71 is equipped with HydrauMind, Komatsu's unique hydraulic system

What is HydrauMind?

HydrauMind system is one of the most sophisticated yet mechanically simple hydraulic systems currently available.

HydrauMind is not computer-dependent, as it is essentially hydraulic not electronic. Its strength lies in its simplicity.

The system incorporates many major breakthroughs and has earned Komatsu almost 200 patents.

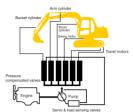
Benefits of HydrauMind

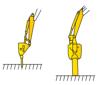
Power, versatility, manoeuverability, controllability - you name it. Never has an excavator been so easy to operate, so natural, so intuitive. In a sense, you don't really operate it at all, you wear it.

For example, when the ground condition changes in digging, you don't have to think about changing your lever strokes because the HydrauMind instantly, silently, automatically sends just the right amount of oil to the actuators at just the right pressure to accommodate the change.

When you move the boom, arm and bucket at the same time, all the equipment works together with the optimum combination of speed and power - as if it were a human hand.







The modular design concept of HydrauMind makes it easy to add additional hydraulic circuits.



Working through soft rock or pulling up boulders is easy because the system precisely controls boom raise, preventing the cutting edge from slipping.



Fine-control lifting is easy because the system keeps lever control steady, no matter, how heavy the load because the system keeps work equipment speed steady.

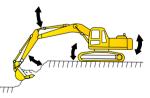
In the HydrauMind system, the load-sensing valves and pressure-compensated valves automatically handle all adjustments for individual jobs based on the pressure and the lever stroke detected.



Digging along ditch walls is easy because the system delivers such powerful bucket side force, obtained from swing force.



Full loading of buckets is easy, because during simultaneous operations, the work equipment can move slowly and precisely under maximum power.



Chassis-shake is reduced during simultaneous operations because the work load causes no change in the work equipment speed.

RELIABILITY



Reliable structures

The rugged Boom & Arm are designed and built using the latest in technology. The cast-end boom top & mounts and reinforced arm have proven endurance in the most demanding applications.

Durable Engine

The PC71 is powered by the fuelefficient and easy-to-maintain KOEL4R 1040 industrial engine. This engine, coupled with Komatsu's revolutionary hydraulics offers unmatched productivity.

Tough Undercarriage

The PC71 is fitted with an original Komatsu design track assembly featuring track guiding guards that prevent the track chain from slipping off the track rollers. Idler guards ensure smooth riding of tracks over the idler.

Heavy Duty Dozer Blade

The heavy duty dozer blade has high drawbar pull and provides excellent dozing capability for various applications such as back-filling, levelling etc.

Other Features

Double lock electric connectors prevent loose connections due to vibrations.







WORKING ENVIRONMENT





Suspension Seat

The suspension seat adjusts the height, based on the weight of the operator, making it convenient and comfortable to operate and improving overall productivity. Operators will find the seat suiting their ohysique.

Adjustable Seat & Control Levers

The seat slides forward and backward with the control levers to ensure best operating position at all times. The operator will have ample legroom depending on his frame.

EASY MAINTENANCE

Extended Maintenance Intervals

The advanced HydrauMind system ensures hydraulic oil properties are maintained longer than in conventional systems. This enhances the replacement interval of oil & filters, without the necessity of any special oils. The hydraulic system also eliminates the need of some consumables & components that are required in conventional systems.

Fully-opening engine hood

The engine hood opens fully, making daily service checks easier, standing on the ground.

Easy bucket replacement

The snap-ring type bucket pin fixture makes it simple to replace the bucket - just a single screwdriver is needed.

Battery

Easy access is provided for maintenance and serviceability of the heavy duty 95 Ah battery.



SPECIFICATIONS



Model	KOEL 4R-1040
Type4-c	ycle, water-cooled, direct-injection
Aspiration	Naturally aspirated
No. of cylinders	4
Bore	105mm 4.13"
Stroke	120mm 4.72"
Piston displacement	4.16ltr 253.63 cu in
Gross Power	
(SAE J1995)	60 HP 44.1 kW @ 1900 RPM
Governor	All-speed, mechanical



HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

TypeHydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical
Intelligence New Design) system
Closed-centre system with load sensing
valves and pressure compensated valves

Main pump: Type......Variable-displacement piston pump

Hydraulic motors:

Travel2 x Axial piston motor with parking brake Swing.....1 x Axial piston motor with Swing holding brake

Relief valve settings:

Implement circuits	250 kg/cm ²	3,560PSI/	24.5 MP
Travel circuits	250 kg/cm ²	3,560PSI/	24.5 MP
Swing circuits	195 kg/cm ²	2,770PSI/	19.1 MF
Pilot circuits	30 kg/cm ²	430PSI/	2.9 MP
Service valve		Add-on type	(optiona

Hydraulic cylinders:

numl	per of cy	linders bore x stroke
Boom	1	115 mm x 840 mm 4.5" x 33.1"
Arm	1	100 mm x 865 mm 3.9" x 34.1"
Bucket	1	90 mm x 710 mm 3.5" x 28.0"

All hydraulic joints are with O-Ring face seal type (ORFS)



Driven by	Hydrostatic motor
	Planetary gear reduction
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Swing lock	Oil disc brake
Swing speed	12.0 RPM

DRIVES & BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers
Drive method	Fully hydrostatic type
Drive motorAxial p	piston motor, in-shoe design
Reduction system	Eccentrical differential
	planetary gear reduction
Max. drawbar pull	. 5500 kg 12,125 lb/53.9 kN
Max. travel speed (High)	3.5 km/h 2.2 MPH
Max. travel speed (Low)	2.3 km/h 1.4 MPH
Service brake	Hydraulic lock type
Parking broke	Oil dies broke



UNDERCARRIAGE

Track frame	Box section type
Seal of track	Sealed track
Track adjuster	Hydraulic type
No. of shoes	38 each side
No. of carrier rollers	1 each side
No. of track rollars	5 oach eido



COOLANT & LUBRICANT CAPACITY

Fuel tank	130.0 ltr 34.3 U.S. gal
Radiator	22.0 ltr 5.8 U.S. gal
Engine	9.6 ltr 2.5 U.S.gal
Final drive, each side	1.7 ltr 0.4 U.S. gal
Swing drive	1.5 ltr 0.4 U.S. gal
Hydraulic tank	57.0 ltr 15.1 U.S.gal



OPERATING WEIGHT (approximate)

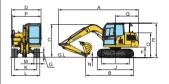
Operating weight, including 3710 mm 12'2" one-piece boom, 1650 mm 5'5"arm, SAE heaped 0.3 m3 0.4 cu.yd backhoe HD bucket, operator, lubricant, coolant and full fuel tank and the standard equipment.

Triple-Grouser Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure	
450 mm	7050 kg	0.34 kg/cm ²	
18"	(15,510 lb)	4.82 PSI/33.2 kPa	

DIMENSIONS

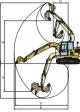
	Komatsu	PC71
	1.65 m 5'5" arm	2.25 m 7'5"arm
A Overall length	6080 mm 19'11"	6105 mm 20'
B Length on ground (transport)	3645 mm 12'	3515 mm 11'6"
C Overall Height (to top of boom)	2500 mm 8'2"	2830 mm 9'3"
D Overall width	2225 mm	7'4"
E Overall height (to top of cab)	2590 mm	8'6"
F Ground clearance, counterweight	750 mm	2'6"
G Min. ground clearance	350 mm	1'2"
H Tail swing radius	1750 mm	5'9"
Length of track on ground	2130 mm	7'
J Track length	2765 mm	9'1"
K Track gauge	1700 mm	5'7"
L Width of crawler	2150 mm	7'1"
M Shoe width	450 mm	1'6"
N Grouser height	20 mm	0.79"
O Machine cab height	1810 mm	5'11"
P Machine cab width	2180 mm	7'2"
Q Distance, swing center to rear end	1750 mm	5'9"





WORKING RANGE

Komatsu PC71		WITH 3.7	WITH 2.62 m TUNNEL BOOM		
	Arm	1.65 m 5'5" arm	1.65 m 5'5" arm 2.25 m 7'5"arm		
Α	Max. digging height	7150 mm 23'6"	7515 mm 25'	5575 mm 18'4"	
В	Max. dumping height	5015 mm 16'5"	5420 mm 18'	3670 mm 12'1"	Ī
С	Max. digging depth	4100 mm 13'5"	4690 mm 15'5"	3235 mm 10'7"	
D	Max. vertical wall digging depth	3505 mm 11'5"	3265 mm 10'7"	1765 mm 5'0"	٨
Е	Max. digging reach	6360 mm 20'10"	6900 mm 23'	5040 mm 16'6"	
F	Max. digging reach at ground level	6220 mm 20'5"	6770 mm 22'4"	4860 mm 15'4"	1
G	Min. swing radius	1750 mm 5'9"	2075 mm 6'8"	1975 mm 6'6"	С
Н	Bucket digging force	4800 kg 10,580 lb/47.1 kN	4800 kg 10,580 lb/47.1 kN	4800 kg 10,580 lb/47.1 kN	1
	Arm crowd force	3600 kg 7,940 lb/35.3 kN	3050 kg 6,720 lb/29.9 kN	3600 kg 6940 lb/35.3 kN	



PC71 PC71 HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR



BUCKET OPTIONS

Bucket capacity (heaped)		Width		Weight	No. of	Arm	
SAE PCSA	CECE	Without side With side cutters cutters		(with side cutter)	teeth	1.65m 5'5"	2.25m 7'5"
0.09 m ³ 0.12 cu. yd	0.08 m ³ 0.10 cu. yd	350 mm 13.8"	450 mm 17.7"	145 kg 320 lb	3	0	0
0.30 m³ (GP) 0.40 cu. yd	0.27 m ³ 0.36 cu. yd	790 mm 31.1"	890 mm 35.0"	236 kg 520 lb	4	0	Δ
0.35 m ³ 0.47 cu.yd	0.30 m³ 0.40 cu.yd	845 mm 33.3"	950 mm 37.4"	265 kg 584 lb	4	0	Δ

These charts are based on over-side stability with fully loaded bucket at maximum reach.

O General purpose use, weight up to 1.8 t/m2 1.52 U.S.ton/cu yd △ Material weight up 1.2 t/m³ 1.01 U.S ton/cu yd



LIFTING CAPACITY



- A : Reach from swing center Conditions:
- B : Bucket hook height • 3710 mm 12' 2" one-piece boom
- C : lifting capacity • 1650 mm 5' 5" arm
- Cf: Rating over front 0.3 m³ 0.4 cu, vd SAE heaped HD bucket
- 450 mm 18" triple-grouser shoes Cs: Rating over side
- Rating at maximum reach

A	Θ	Max	5.5m	(18')	4.5m	(15')	3m (10')	1.5m	(5')
В	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
6m (20')	*1550 3400	*1550 3400								
4.5m (15')	*1350 3000	1300 2900					*1300 2850	*1300 2850		
3m (10')	1050 2300	900 2000			1400 3100	1200 2650	*1800 3950	*1800 3950	*3150 6950	*3150 6950
1.5m (5')	950 2100	800 1750	900 2000	800 1750	1350 3000	1150 2550	*2500 5500	2200 4850		
0 (0)	950 2100	800 1750			1250 2750	1050 2300	2400 5300	2000 4400		
-1.5m (-5')	1200 2650	1000 2200			1250 2750	1050 2300	2400 5300	1950 4300	*4500 9900	*4500 9900
-3m (-10')	*1400 3100	*1400 3100					*1600 3550	*1600 3550		

* Load is limited by hydraulic capacity rather than tipping. Ratings are based on SAE Standard No. J 1097. Rated loads do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lift capacity or 75% of tipping load



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

- ► 55 A alternator
- Air cleaner, dry type with dust indicator
- ► Autodecel Function ► Automatic deaeration system for fuel
- ► All-weather steel cab (with tinted safety glass windows, pull-up type front window with lock device. removable lower windshield, lockable door, floor mat, adjustable seat) Blade (2.26 m wide)
- ► Cooling fan
- ► Counterweight 680 kg (1500 lb)
- Control levers (wrist control. adjustable)
- Drive system:hydrostatic, high-low travel system
- ► Electric horn
- ► Front light (1)
- ► Fuel control lever
- Heavy duty 95 Ah Battery
- ► Rear view mirror (RH)
- Radiator and oil cooler with dustproof net

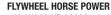
- ► Revolving frame underguards
- ► Seat, adjustable
- Starting motor, 24-volt direct electric Track frames:
- 5-track/1-carrier roller (each side), 450 triple-grouser shoes and hydraulic track
- adjusters
- Track roller guard
- ► Tool kit
- Vandalism protection locks ➤ Wiper Motor



- ► Air Prefilter
- ► Bucket Options:

Trenching Bucket 0.09 m3 GP Bucket 0.35 m³ GP & HD Bucket 0.30 m3

- ► Cold start kit
- ► Front Cab Guard ► Lifting arrangement of machines
- ► Rock breaker
- Rock breaker Adaptation kit
- ► Tunnelling configuration



Net: 66 kW 89 HP / 2200 min⁻¹

OPERATING WEIGHT 12,600 kg

KOMATSU®

PC130-7





HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR

HORSE POWER Net: 66 kW 89 HP / 2200 min-1 **OPERATING WEIGHT** 12,600 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY (SAE)

0.53 m³ - 0.70 m³

WALK-AROUND

Superior Durability

- High rigidity work equipment with cast end boom top
- · Sturdy frame structure
- · Reliable Komatsu manufactured major components

See page 4.

Excellent Machine Management

- · Long replacement intervals of oils & filters
- Self-Diagnostic Monitor: The advanced Komatsu diagnostic system facilitates easy service by reducing diagnostic time and indicating components due for replacement/ maintenance
- Continuous Machine Monitoring System continuously monitors and checks all working parameters right from the engine ignition. The operator is alerted only in case of abnormalities, so that full concentration is ensured on the job.

See page 7 & 8.

Matchless Productivity

- · Powered by heavy duty Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3 diesel engine
- Active mode for fast cycle times & faster production
- Advanced CLSS hydraulics for fine control and quick working speeds
- Two Boom Setting: Smooth & Power modes can be toggled to change the operation depending on the application

See page 4 & 5.



Ecology & Economy features

- · Low Emission Engine: The Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3 conforms to global emission standards for reduced emissions.
- Environment-Friendly Mode: The Economy Mode of Operation offers reduced fuel consumption, quieter operation and lesser emissions.

See page 4.



- · Low vibration with cab damper mounting
- · Operator seat and console with armrest that enables operations in the appropriate posture

See page 6.









ADVANCED HYDRAULICS

PRODUCTIVITY AND DURABILITY

High Production and Low Fuel Consumption

The increased output and fuel savings of the Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3 engine result in improved production per unit of fuel. Komatsu PC130-7 gets its exceptional power and work capacity from a Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3 engine. Output is 89 HP/66 kW, providing increased hydraulic power and improved fuel efficiency.

Working Mode Selection

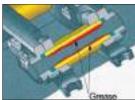
Working Mode	Application	Advantage
А	Active Mode	Maximum production/power Fast Cycle times
Е	Economy Mode	Excellent Fuel Economy
В	Breaker Operation	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow
L	Lifting Mode	Hydraulic pressure has been increased by 7%

Komatsu PC130-7 excavator is equipped with four working modes (A, E, B and L modes). Each mode is designed to match engine speed, pump speed and system pressure with the current application. This provides the flexibility to match equipment performance to the job at hand.

Sturdy Frame Structure



The revolving frame, centre frame and undercarriage are designed by using advanced threedimensional CAD and FEM analysis technology.



Grease sealed track

Komatsu PC130-7 uses grease sealed tracks for extended undercarriage life.



Track with Strut

Komatsu PC130-7 uses track links with strut providing superb durability.

Reliable Components

All the major machine components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu.

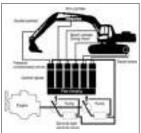
Highly Reliable Electronic Devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

• Controller • Sensors

Melanceater Rinds on the istanthe in the information of the control of the contro and improve reliability.

What is HvdrauMind?



It's a technologically complex yet mechanically simple system which supervises the work operations of the excavator. Its strength lies in its simplicity.

The system incorporates many major breakthroughs and has earned Komatsu almost 200 patents.

What are the benefits of the HvdrauMind?

Power, versatility, manoeuvrability, controllability - you name it. Never has an excavator been so easy to operate, so natural, so intuitive. In a sense, you don't really operate it at all, you wear it.

For example, when the ground condition changes in digging...

You don't have to think about changing your lever strokes because the HydrauMind instantly, silently, automatically sends just the right amount of oil to the actuators at just the right pressure to accommodate the change.

When you move the boom, arm and bucket at the same time...

All the equipment works organically with the optimum combination of speed and power as if it were a human hand.

The HydrauMind also makes it easy to change or add valves and work equipment. Moreover, because the system is hydraulic and not electronic, it ensures the

HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR

best service availability in the industry.

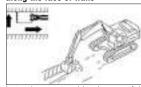
The HydrauMind System Makes **Everything Easier**

It is easier to fully load the buckets.



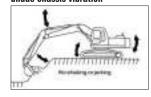
During simultaneous operations, the work equipment moves slowly at maximum power, without being influenced by the other actuators. so it is easy to fully load the

It is easy to carry out digging work along the face of walls



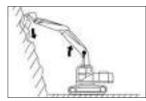
Lateral power pushing is powerful, allowing digging operation to be carried out efficiently.

The machine can carry out operations easily without any undue chassis vibration



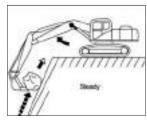
During simultaneous operations, there is no change in the work equipment speed caused by change in load. Thus, there is minimal chassis vibration.

It is easy to scrape down



Even without operating the lever to the maximum position, maximum digging power can be obtained, making it possible to carry out slow control.

It is easy to dig soft rock or dig up boulders



It is easy to control the boom RAISE, so the cutting edge does not deviate from the boulders



WORKING ENVIRONMENT



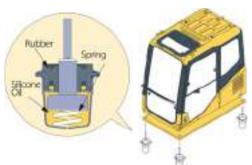
Spacious Cab Interior

6

The cab interior is spacious. An ergonomically-designed operator's seat and easy access to all control levers ensure maximum operator comfort and better concentration on the job.

Low vibration with cab damper mounting

A multi-layer viscous mount system incorporates a long stroke along with a spring. The new cab damper mounting combined with a high-rigidity deck reduces vibration at the operator's seat.



Comparison of Riding Comfort

Cab Damper Mounting



Multi-Layer Viscous Mount



Conditions: – Floor vibration while travelling forward at high speed over obstacles.

Pitch vertical direction on graph shows size of vibration

Adjustable Seat and Control Levers

The seat slides forward and backward together with the work equipment control levers to ensure the best operating position at all times.



Lock lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement. Neutral start function only allows machine to be started in lock position.



SAFETY AND MAINTENANCE

Protective Guards

Thermal guard placed around high temperature parts of the engine provides adequate protection against accidental contacts, while the fan guard wards off impending hazards.



Skid-Proof Surface

The steps with its skid-proof surface provide safer grip while on machine for maintenance and servicing.



Large Handrail

The large handrail with a provision to mount rearview mirror, supports easy climbing.





Orderly arranged cooling system

Since the radiator, after cooler and the oil cooler are arranged in parellel manner, it is easy to clean, remove and install.







Α

В

Ε

F

EASY MAINTENANCE

Self-Diagnostic Monitor

PC130-7

Komatsu PC130-7 features an advanced diagnostics system. The Komatsu exclusive system identifies maintenance items, reduces diagnostic times, indicates oil and filter replacement hours and displays error codes.

Continuous Machine Monitoring System

When turning starting switch ON, check-beforestarting item and caution items appear on the liquid crystal panel. If abnormalities are found, a warning lamp blinks and a warning buzzer sounds. The continuous machine condition checks help prevent the development of serious problems and allows the operator to concentrate on the controls.

Abnormalities on Electronic System Display with Code

When an error occurs during operation, a user code is displayed. When an important user code is displayed, a caution lamp blinks and a warning buzzer sounds to prevent the development of serious problems.

Oil Maintenance Function

When machine exceeds oil or filter replacement time, oil maintenance monitor lights up to inform operator.

- A Engine Water Temperature
- B Battery Charge
- C Engine Oil Pressure
- D Air Cleaner Clogging Monitor
- E Auto-Decel Switch
- F Travel Speed Select Switch
- G Working Mode Select Switch
- H Fuel Lever Monitor
- I User or Trouble Code Display

K Engine Oil Level

L Engine Preheat

G

- M Swing Lock Display
- N Oil Maintenance





New hybrid filter element

The new hybrid filter element in the hydraulic circuit extends the element change interval and improved filtering enhances oil life.

Easy-to-Change Engine Oil Filter

The engine oil filter is remotely fitted for easy accessibility.

SPECIFICATIONS



Н

K

М

N

Model Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3
Type
Aspiration
Number of cylinders
Bore
Stroke
Piston displacement
Flywheel horsepower:
SAE J1349
DIN6270
Governor

Meets 2001 EPA, EU, and Japan Tier-II emission regulations.



HYDRAULICS

Design) system, closed-center system with load sensing valves and pressure compensated valves

Main Pump:

Type...... Variable displacement piston type pumps supplying Boom, arm, bucket, swing, and travel circuits Maximum flow..... 226 ltr/min 59.7 US gal/min Supply for control circuit........... Self-reducing valve Hydraulic motors:

Travel 2 x axial piston motor with parking brake Swing...... 1 x axial piston motor with swing holding brake Relief valve setting:

Hydraulic cylinders:

(No of cylinders - bore x stroke x rod dia) Boom.....2 – 105 mm x 990 mm x 70 mm



SWING SYSTEM

Holding brake/Swing lock..... Mechanical disc brake



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedal
Drive method	
Maximum drawbar pull	. 100 kN 10200 kgf 22,486 ll
Gradeability	70%, 35
Maximum travel speed:	
High	
(Auto-Shift) Low	2.70 km/h 1.67 mp
Sarvina hraka	Hydraulic loc



UNDERCARRIAGE

Centre trame
Track frame
Seal of track
Track adjuster
Number of shoes (each side)
Number of carrier rollers 1 each side
Number of track rollers (each side)



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY

Fuel tank				 					247 ltr 65.25 U.S. gal
Radiator				 					.13.4 ltr 3.53 U.S. gal
Engine				 					11 ltr 2.9 U.S. gal
Final drive (each side)	١.			 					. 2.5 ltr 0.66 U.S. gal
Swing drive				 					. 2.5 ltr 0.66 U.S. gal
Hydraulic tank				 					. 90 ltr 23.77 U.S. gal



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 4.6 m 15'1" one-piece boom, 2.1 m 6'10" arm, SAE heaped 0.64 m3 0.83 vd3 bucket capacity. lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator and standard equipment.

KOMATSU PC130-7								
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure						
500 mm	12,600 kg	0.39 kg/cm ²						





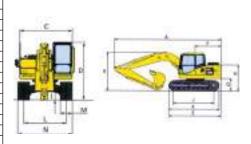






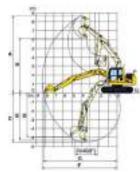
MACHINE DIMENSIONS

	Arm Length	2100 mm	2500 mm
Α	Length on ground (transporting)	7650 mm	7655 mm
В	Overall height (to top to bottom)	2620 mm	2175 mm
С	Width of upper structure	2490 mm	2490 mm
D	Total height (to top of cabin)	2810 mm	2810 mm
Е	Overall length of basic machine	3985 mm	3985 mm
F	Distance from swing center to tail	2170 mm	2170 mm
G	Clearance under counterweight	855 mm	855 mm
н	Counterweight height	1885 mm	1885 mm
1	Minimum ground clearance	400 mm	400 mm
J	Track length on ground	2880 mm	2880 mm
к	Track length	3610 mm	3610 mm
L	Track gauge	1990 mm	1990 mm
м	Width of tack shoe	500 mm	500 mm
N	Overall track width	2490 mm	2490 mm





WORKING RANGE



	Arm Types	2.1 m	2.5 m
Α	Maximum digging height	8345 mm	8610 mm
В	Maximum dumping height	5905 mm	6170 mm
С	Maximum dumping height	5115 mm	5520 mm
D	Maximum vertical wall digging depth	4520 mm	4940 mm
Е	Maximum digging depth of cut for 8' level	4875 mm	5315 mm
F	Maximum digging reach	7925 mm	8290 mm
G	Maximum digging reach at ground level	7795 mm	8170 mm
	Bucket digging force (ISO)	86.29 kN	86.29 kN
	Bucket maximum digging force (ISO)	93.16 kN	93.16 kN
	Arm crowd force (ISO)	70.60 kN	61.78 kN
	Arm maximum crowd force (ISO)	77.47 kN	67.66 kN



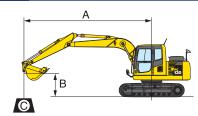
BACKHOE BUCKET, ARM AND BOOM COMBINATION

Bucket Capacity (heaped)	w	Width		Number	Arm length		
SAE, PCSA	Without Side Cutters	With Side Cutters	With Side Cutters	of Teeth	2.5 m 8'2"	2.1 m 6'10"	
*0.53m³ 0.69 yd³		908 mm 35.75"	470 kg 1036 lb	4	0	0	
0.64m³ 0.83 yd³	1000 mm 39.36"	1125 mm 44.29"	485 kg 1069 lb	5		0	
0.70m³ 0.91 yd³	1080 mm 42.52"	1210 mm 47.64"	575 kg 1267 lb	5		0	

These figures are based on operating conditions with maximum bucket load, maximum reach and ensured lateral stability. *Rock Bucket O: Material weight not over 1.8t/m³, 1.52 U.S. ton / yd³ 🔲 : Material weight not over 1.5t/m³, 1.27 Ú.S. ton / yd³



LIFTING CAPACITY



Reach for swing centre

Bucket height C Cf Lifting Capacity Rating over front

Rating over side Rating at maximum reach

Conditions:

• 4600 mm 15'1" one-piece boom 0.64 m³ 0.83 yd³ SAE heaped bucket

500 mm 20" triple-grouser shoe

Unit kg & lb

Reach	Max. R	each 😝	6	m	4.5	i m	3	m	1.5	i m
Height	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
6 m	2600 *	2350			3150 *	3050				
19' 8"	5730*	5180			6940*	6720				
4.5 m	2400 *	1650	2600	1750	3300 *	3000				
14' 9"	5290*	3530	5730	3860	7280*	6610				
3 m	2050	1350	2600	1700	4000 *	2850	5600 *	5600 *		
9' 10"	4520	9960	5730	3750	8820*	6280	12350*	12350*		
1.5 m	1900	1200	2500	1600	4000	2600	6300 *	4850		
4' 11"	4190	2650	5510	3530	8820	5730	13890*	10690		
0 m	1950	1250	2400	1500	3800	2400	5800 *	4500		
	4300	2760	5290	3310	8380	5290	12880*	9920		
-1.5 m	2200	1400	2350	1500	3700	2350	5850 °	4450	5450 *	5450 *
-4' 11"	4850	3090	5180	3310	8160	5180	12900*	9810	12020*	12020*
-3 m	2900	1850			3750	2350	6400 °	4550	5800 *	5800 *
-9' 10"	6390	4080			8270	5180	14110*	10030	12790*	12790*



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

- · 2-speed hydrostatic travel system with
- planetary gear unit and hydraulic brake disc 4 working mode selection system; active mode, economy mode, breaker mode and
- lifting mode 500mm triple grouser track
- Adjustable suspension seat
 Alternator 24V/25A
- Arm 2100 mm
- · Auto deceleration function Battery 2 x 12V/65Ah
- · Boom safety valves Corrosion resistor
- Double-element air cleaner with dust indicator and automatic dust evacuator
- Electric horn
- · Electronic closed centre load sensing

- (E-¬CLSS) hydraulic system (HydrauMind)
- Engine overheat prevention system
- · Engine stop key
- Fan guard structure Fuel control dial
- Komatsu SAA4D95LE-3, 66 kW direct
- injection, after-cooled, turbocharged engine
- · Large handrails and rear view mirror
- Lockable fuel tank cap and cover
 Monitor panel 7 segment
 One piece boom 4600 mm
 Power Max function

- PPC control levels and pedals for steering and travelling
- Pre-Fuel Filter
- maintenance manual
- · Spare parts catalogue and operation/

- · Standard counterweight
- Standard signs (labels)
- Starter motor 24V/3.0kw
- Toolkit • Track roller - 7 each side
- Water separator
 Working lights 2 (Boom & RH)
- · Working mode selection system

Optional Equipment

- · Air-Cooler Unit in Cabin
- Bolt on top and front guard (Operator
- protective guard)

 Rock Breaker adaptation kit
- Service valve

Product improvement is a continuous process. Specifications given in this publication are therefore subject to change without notice. Photographs depicted may be of optional equipment.



HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR



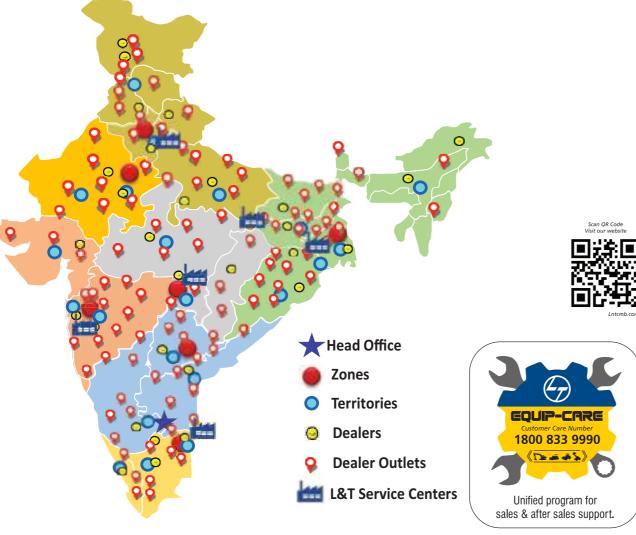
Photos may include optional equipment.

OPERATING WEIGHT: 20300 - 20900 kg

GROSS HP: 110 kW 148 HP/2000 min-1

BUCKET CAPACITY: 0.85 / 1.00 m³ NET HP: 103 kW 138 HP/2000 min⁻¹

L&T CMB NATIONWIDE SALES & AFTER SALES SUPPORT NETWORK



Product improvement is a continuous process. Specifications given in this publication are therefore subject to change without notice. Photographs depicted may be of optional equipment

Printed on 05-2022 www.komatsuindia.in

KOMATSU®

Marketed & Serviced by:



L&T Construction & Mining Machinery

Larsen & Toubro Limited

1st Floor Lakshminarayan Complex, 10/1 Palace Road, Bengaluru- 560 052 Tel: 080 40401700 / 900 E-mail: ceb@larsentoubro.com www.lntcmb.com

Zonal Offices:

Delhi (011) 40819500 Nagpur (0712) 6606441/2260025 Jaipur (0141) 4385900

Kolkata (033) 44002433/22831442 Hyderabad (040) 47575064

Pune (020) 48544259 Chennai (044) 40706864

Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. CIN: L99999MH1946PLC004768

KOMATSU is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

WALK-AROUND





<u>Lower Fuel Consumption</u>

- Reduction of fuel consumption (Similar to PC210-10M0)
- Reduction of hydraulic piping loss

_LowerMaintenance Cost

- Less maintenance time with new features
- System to detect and prevent failure of major components
- Monitor panel displays a wide range of maintenance information for quick action

Higher Durability

- Enhanced work equipment
- Improved swing circle rigidity

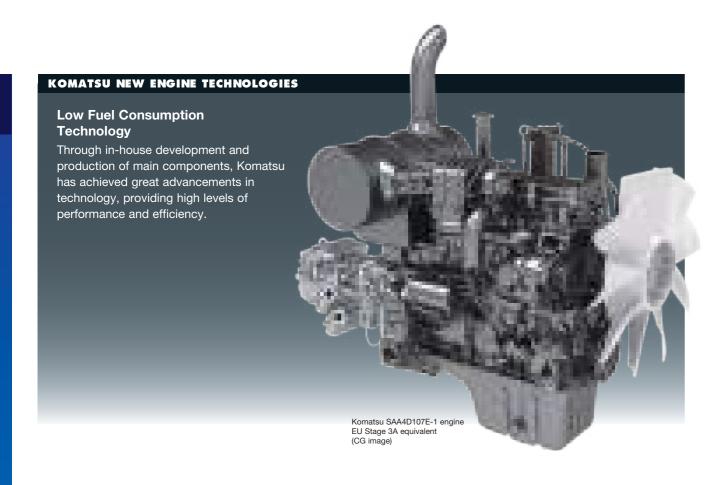
_Safety & Comfort

- Large comfortable cab
- Rear view monitor system (Optional)

Information & Communication Technology (ICT) & KOMTRAX

- Large high resolution Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) monitor
- Equipment Management Monitoring System
- KOMTRAX

LOWER FUEL CONSUMPTION

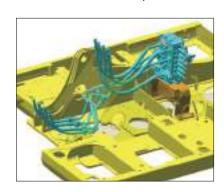


New 4-cylinder engine

Equipped with new 4-cylinder engine to reduce fuel consumption. In particular, the fuel efficiency during idling is improved significantly. It is optimal for general construction sites.

Reduction of hydraulic pressure loss

The internal shape of the control valves, piping diameter and fitting shape have been thoroughly revised. With this improvement, hydraulic loss is reduced more than ever. It contributes to low fuel consumption.



ECO gauge

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a glance on the right of the multi-function color monitor for environment-friendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO2 emissions and efficient fuel consumption.



ECO gauge

Idling caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.

Assists Energy-saving Operations

Auto idle stop function

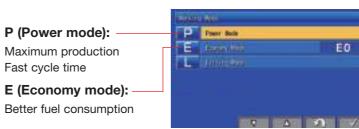
When the engine has been idling for certain time, the engine stops automatically to reduce unnecessary fuel consumption and exhaust emissions. The duration before the engine shutdown can be easily programmed.

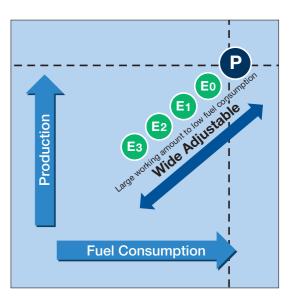


Fuel Saving Support Functions

Just select a working mode that suits your purpose

In P mode, LARGE PRODUCTION is implemented. In E mode, LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION is implemented. E mode can be adjusted widely from E0 to E3 mode, and it adapts flexibly to customer's demands. Komatsu tuned each work mode precisely, ensuring high operability and workability. Just by selecting the work mode, it provides the best performance in demanding applications.



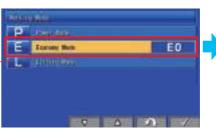


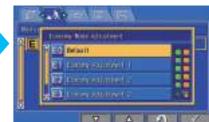
Easy selectable E mode

Compared with the conventional model, E0 to E3 can be easily selected on the monitor.

L Lifting mode:

- Suitable attachment speed
- Lifting capacity is increased 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.





EASY SERVICEABILITY



Maintenance is a key element of operating cost. Komatsu focused on reducing maintenance time & cost.

Easy access to filters

Engine oil and fuel system filters are integrated

into one side to allow easy maintenance and service.



Easy cleaning cooling unit

Cleanability of the cooling unit has been improved.

- Dust-proof net does not require tools for cleaning
- Single piece Oil cooler, no more space for dust accumulation



Easy oil sampling

Easy oil sampling ports are added. It helps to get oil samples that are agitated properly & helps in accurate analysis.



Minimize breaking of circle grease nipple

The grease nipple of the circle is embedded for protection. It is irrefrangible structure even if wood debris or dusts are coiled around a swing circle.



Extended replacement interval of hydraulic oil filter

The replacement interval of the hydraulic oil filter element is extended by 2.5 times. It contributes to reduction of maintenance cost.





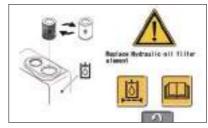
Easy maintenance time management

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Witten	Hiteral Rest	
E FOR PROCESS COMES	W4	Ĭ
Committee or	10 to 10	
A Editor All Ald All Andrews	WA -	l
District backeter-man		
Fall West Filter Duras	17818 766	Ī
ful See faller Owns	1000	

Detect abnormality of hydraulic circuit Clogging sensor for hydraulic oil as standard

When the hydraulic oil filter is clogged, the caution message pops up on the monitor to notify filter replacement. It helps to take preventive measures to avoid breakdown & repair cost.



Clogging hydraulic oil filter caution

Pre-cleaner for dusty condition (Optional)

Even in dusty places, by installing pre-cleaner coupled with the large air cleaner, the frequency of cleaning the air cleaner will be reduced. Durability has also improved by adopting new high efficiency pre-cleaner.



Battery disconnect switch

A battery disconnect switch allows a technician to disconnect the power supply and lock out before servicing or maintenance of the machine. It also minimize discharge of the battery during non operation for long-term. System operating lamp tells the timing of battery disconnect & prevent controller failures.



Other Features

Easy cleaning drain port of fuel tank

Improved drainability of hydraulic oil and fuel

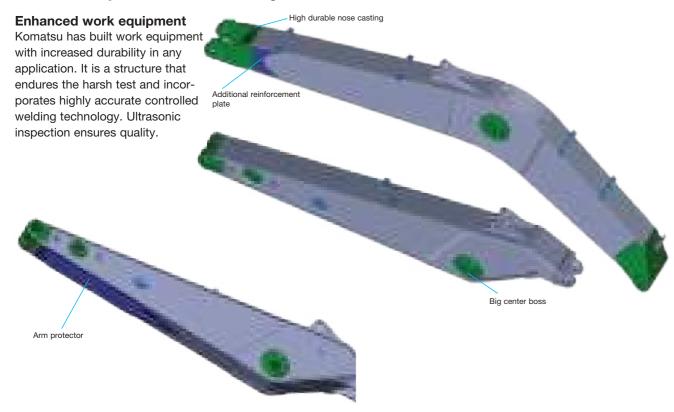
Easy to check level of hydraulic oil

Blow-by pressure detection Fuel line contamination prevention

HIGHER DURABILITY

High Strength Work Equipment & Frames to work with large size bucket.

It has Durability to Withstand Demanding Conditions in General Construction Sites.







Strengthened swing circle

Swing circle with improved durability supports stable operation in any severe jobsite.

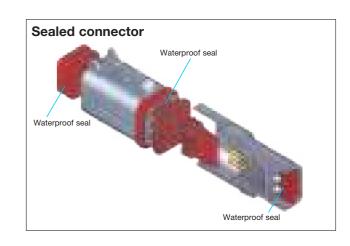
Reliable Komatsu components

All of the major components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu.

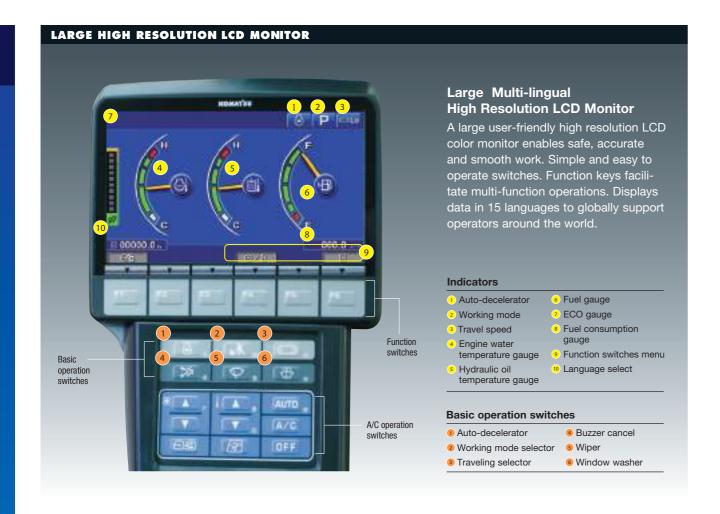
Highly reliable electronic devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

- Controllers Sensors Connectors
- Heat resistant wiring



ICT & KOMTRAX



Supports Efficient Operation

The main screen displays advices for promoting energysaving operations as needed. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs, etc.



ECO guidance menu

ECO guidance records

Operation records

Equipment Management Monitoring System

Monitor function

Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.

Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Trouble data memory function

Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshoot-



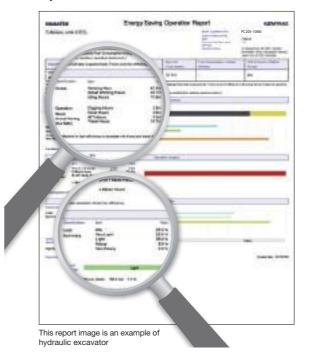
Average fuel consumption logs

KOMTRAX

The Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data about your equipment and fleet in user-friendly format.

Energy Saving Operation Report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-saving operation report based on the operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you efficiently run a business.



Equipment Management Support

Through the web application, a variety of search parameters are available to quickly find information about specific machines based on key factors. Moreover, KOMTRAX finds out machines with problems from your fleet and shows you through an optimal interface.



The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

Optimum Strategy for Efficient Work

With the detailed information that KOMTRAX provides, you can manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make informed decisions and long-term strategy.



SAFETY & COMFORT



Gas-assisted damper cylinders for opening engine hood easily & lock bar for safety

Gas-assisted damper cylinders helps opening the engine hood with light force. Lock bar is also equipped. This equipment will support during maintenance and repair.



Thermal guard, fan guard

Preventing direct contact to high temperature parts or the finger being caught by fan when checking around the engine, by installing thermal guards and fan guard.



Rear view monitor system (Optional)

A new rear view monitor system display has a rear view camera image that is continuously displayed together with the gauges and important vehicle information. This enables the operator to carry out work while easily checking the surrounding area. Even if it is on another screen, it changes to the rear camera image at the same time as the any operation lever is operated.





Lock lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement.

Neutral start function allows machine to be started only in lock position.

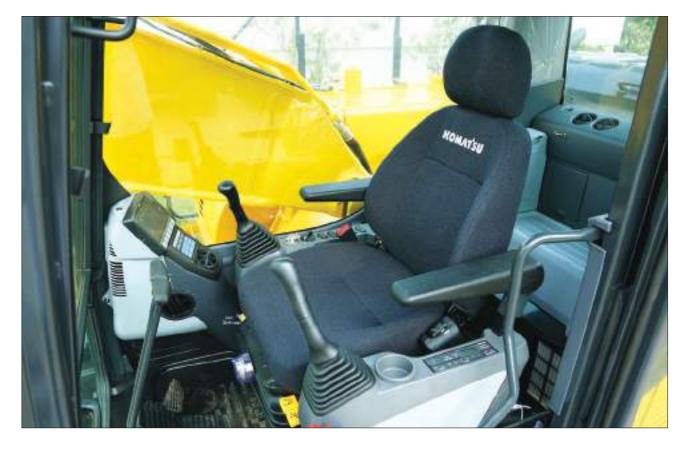


Large handrail



Pump/Engine room partition

Large side view, rear and sidewise mirrors



Ensuring Operator's Comfort contributes to increased Safety and Productivity.

Suspension seat

Suspension seat with weight adjustment function as standard equipment. This seat can reduce fatigue even in operation for a long time.



Pressurized cab

Pressurizing inside the cab to minimize the dust entering from out side. It keeps the cab clean.

Low cab noise

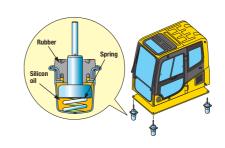
With substantially low noise, you can comfortably operate for long hours. Ambient noise is also reduced, reducing the stress of workers near the machine.

Automatic A/C

It adjusts automatically to a comfortable temperature throughout the year, even in hot and cold areas.

Low vibration with cab damper mounting

The cab damper mounting combined with high rigidity deck aids in vibration reduction at operator seat.



Multifunction audio (Standard radio)



The location may change

12 V power supply (Optional)

Magazine box

Cool & hot box

Luggage box



PRODUCT SUPPORT





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, L&T CMB (Komatsu Distributor) provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

L&T CMB will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.

Technical support

L&T CMB offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection



Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by L&T CMB's strong nationwide network of dealerships, parts outlets and service centres.

Parts availability

L&T CMB with its central warehouse at Nagpur and nationwide network of dealership ensure ready availability and highest first pick rate of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Repair & maintenance service

L&T CMB offers periodical maintenance and quality repair service to the customers, utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.



SPECIFICATION

ENGINE

Model Komatsu SAA4D107E-1 Type. Water-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injection Aspiration Turbocharged, aftercooled Number of cylinders 4 Bore. 107 mm Stroke 124 mm Piston displacement 4.46 L
Horsepower: SAE J1995

EU Stage 3A emission equivalent.



HYDRAULICS

Type. HydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical Intelligence New Design) system, closed-center system with load sensing valves and pressure compensated valves Number of selectable working modes 6 Main pump: Type Variable displacement piston type Pumps for Boom, arm, bucket, swing, and travel circuits Supply for control circuit Self-reducing valve Hydraulic motors: Travel 2 x axial piston motor with parking brake Swing 1 x axial piston motor with swing holding brake Relief valve setting: Implement circuits 37.3 MPa 380 kgf/cm² Pilot circuit 3.2 MPa 33 kgf/cm² Hydraulic cylinders: (Number of cylinders - bore x stroke x rod diameter) Boom 2–120 mm x 1334 mm x 85 mm



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILLING)

0 L
.5 L
.0 L
.3 L
.3 L
5 L

SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostatio
Swing reduction	Planetary gear
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Holding brake/Swing lock	Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame
Track frame
Seal of track Sealed track
Track adjuster
Number of shoes (Each side)
Number of carrier rollers 2 each side
Number of track rollers (Each side)



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostatic
Maximum drawbar pull	178 kN 18200 kgf
Gradeability	70%, 35°
Maximum travel speed:	High 4.9 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Mid 4.1 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Low
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Parking brake	Mechanical disc brake



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 5700 mm one-piece boom, 2400 mm arm, 0.85cum General Purpose backhoe bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment

Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure
600 mm	20300 kg	46.1 kPa 0.47 kgf/cm ²
800 mm	20900 kg	36.3 kPa 0.37 kgf/cm ²

15

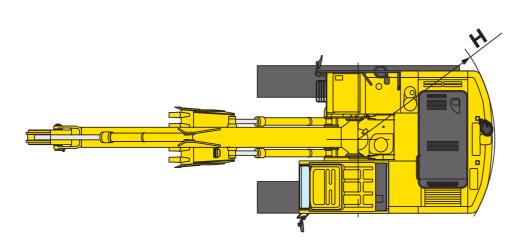
Choice of Buckets

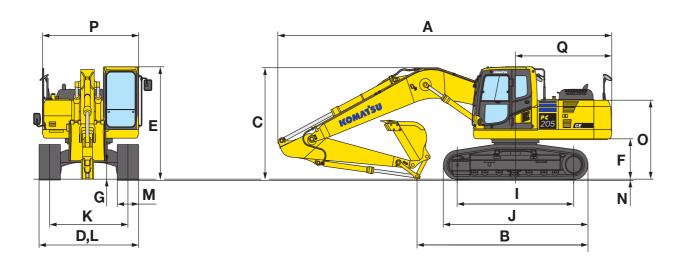
		Width	(mm)			Boom + Arm (m)	Boom + Arm (m)	
Category	Capacity (m³)	Without Side Shrouds,	With Side Shrouds,	Weight* (kg)	Tooth Quantity	Standard Undercarriage (600mm Shoes)	Standard Undercarriage (600mm Shoes)	
		Side Cutters	Side Cutters			5.7+2.4	5.7+2.9	
General	al 0.85 1130 1235 785 5		0	0				
Purpose	1.0	1165	1270	785	5			

^{*} With side cutters \odot : Density upto 1.8t/m³ \square : Density upto 1.5t/m³

DIMENSIONS

Arm Length		2410mm	2925 mm				
Α	Overall length	9830mm 9485 mm					
В	Length on ground (Transport)	5700mm 4815 mm					
C	Overall height (To top of boom)	3190mm 3005 mm					
	Oursell width		0000				
D	Overall width		2800 mm				
E	Overall height (To top of cab)		3040 mm				
F	Ground clearance, counterweight	1085 mm					
G	Ground clearance (Minimum)	440 mm					
Н	Tail swing radius	2835 mm					
I	Track length on ground	3275 mm					
J	Track length	4070 mm					
K	Track gauge	2200 mm					
L	Width of crawler	2800 mm					
М	Shoe width	600 mm					
N	Grouser height	26 mm					
0	Machine cab height	2095 mm					
P	Machine cab width	2710 mm					
Q	Distance, swing center to rear end		2795 mm				

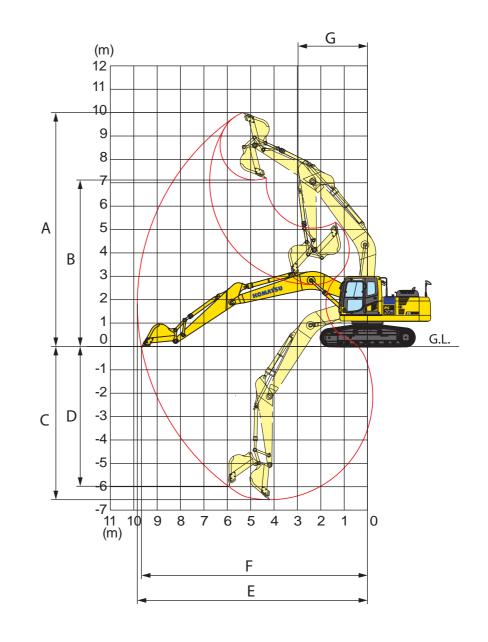






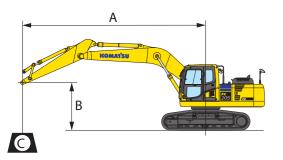
WORKING RANGE

Arm Le	ngth	2410mm	2925 mm		
Α	Max. digging height	9795mm	10000 mm		
В	Max. dumping height	6960mm	7110 mm		
C	Max. digging depth	6000mm	6620 mm		
D	Max. vertical wall digging depth	5080mm	5980 mm		
E	Max. digging reach	9390mm	9875 mm		
F	Max. digging reach at ground level	9195mm	9700 mm		
G	Min. swing radius	3080mm	3040 mm		
1179 ing	Bucket digging force at power max.	138 kN 14100 kgf	138 kN 14100 kgf		
SAE J 1179 Rating	Arm crowd force at power max.	124 kN 12600 kgf	101 kN 10300 kgf		
3015 ing	Bucket digging force at power max.	149 kN 15200 kgf	149 kN 15200 kgf		
ISO 6015 Rating	Arm crowd force at power max.	127 kN 13000 kgf	108 kN 11000 kgf		





LIFTING CAPACITY WITH LIFTING MODE



A: Reach from swing center

: Rating at maximum reach

B: Arm top pin height

C: Lifting capacity

Cf: Rating over front

Cs: Rating over side

Conditions:

• 5700 mm one-piece boom

PC205-10M0 Arm: 2412 mm Without bucket Shoe: 600 mm triple grouser													
A	MAX			7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	m	3.0	m	1.5	i m
В	IVIAA	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
7.5 m	5.49 m	*5400 kg	*5050 kg										
6.0 m	6.71m	*5050 kg	3600 kg			*5250 kg	4400 kg	5500	5500				
4.5 m	7.44m	*4350 kg	2950 kg			*5700 kg	4250 kg	*6700 kg	*6600 kg	*9300 kg	*9300 kg		
3.0 m	7.81 m	*3900 kg	2650 kg	4200 kg	2850 kg	5900 kg	4000 kg	*8450 kg	6050 kg				
1.5 m	7.89 m	3750 kg	2550 kg	4050 kg	2750 kg	5650 kg	3750 kg	8800 kg	5600 kg				
0 m	7.67 m	3900 kg	2600 kg	4000 kg	2650 kg	5500 kg	3650 kg	8550 kg	5400 kg				
–1.5 m	7.13 m	4300 kg	2850 kg			5450 kg	3600 kg	8500 kg	5350 kg	*11350 kg	10300 kg		
−3.0 m	6.19 m	5350 kg	3550 kg			5550 kg	3650 kg	8650 kg	5450 kg	*12950 kg	10500 kg		
–4.5 m													

PC205-1	PC205-10M0 Arm: 2925 mm Without bucket Shoe: 600 mm triple grouser												
A	MAX			7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	m	3.0	m	1.5	i m
В	IVIAA	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
7.5 m	6.42 m	*3340 kg	*3340 kg			*4520 kg	*4520 kg						
6.0 m	7.49 m	*3190 kg	3080 kg	*3560 kg	3090 kg	*4750 kg	4560 kg						
4.5 m	8.15 m	*3190 kg	2600 kg	4470 kg	3030 kg	*5390 kg	4370 kg	*6010 kg	*6010 kg				
3.0 m	8.49 m	*3330 kg	2350 kg	4340 kg	2900 kg	6130 kg	4090 kg	*8210 kg	6290 kg	*12010 kg	11810 kg		
1.5 m	8.56 m	3410 kg	2240 kg	4180 kg	2760 kg	5840 kg	3820 kg	9110 kg	5730 kg	*7340 kg	*7340 kg		
0 m	8.36 m	3470 kg	2260 kg	4060 kg	2650 kg	5610 kg	3610 kg	8700 kg	5380 kg	*5880 kg	*5880 kg		
–1.5 m	7.87 m	3740 kg	2430 kg	4010 kg	2600 kg	5510 kg	3520 kg	8560 kg	5260 kg	*10000 kg	9920 kg	*5870 kg	*5870 kg
−3.0 m	7.03 m	4410 kg	2850 kg			5530 kg	3540 kg	8640 kg	5320 kg	*15560 kg	10260 kg	*10420 kg	*10420 kg
–4.5 m	5.68 m	6120 kg	3930 kg					8870 kg	5520 kg	*13360 kg	10620 kg		

^{*} Load is limited by hydraulic capacity rather than tipping. Ratings are based on ISO standard No.10567. Rated loads do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lift capacity or 75% of tipping load.



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

ENGINE

- Automatic engine warm-up system
- B20 Bio diesel Compliant
- Coolant filter
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Engine, Komatsu SAA4D107E-1
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Auto idle shutdown
- Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Alternator, 24 V/35 A, brushless
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/88 Ah
- Battery disconnect switch with operation lamp
- Starting motor, 24 V/4.5 kW
- Working light, 4 (Boom and RH cab)

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Boom holding valve
- Clogging sensor for hydraulic oil return filter
- Power maximizing system
- Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system
- Working mode selection system

GUARDS AND COVERS

• Fan guard structure

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Track guiding guard, center section
- Track roller, 7 each side
- Shoe, 600 mm triple grouser

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- Automatic A/C with defroster
- Equipment Management Monitoring System
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Rear view mirrors (RH, LH)
- Suspension seat

OTHER EQUIPMENT

- Blow-by sensor
- CounterweightElectric horn
- KOMTRAX
- Oil sampling port (Engine & hydraulic)
- Rear reflector



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ENGINE

Air pre-cleaner

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Amber beacon lamp on cab roof
- Working lights
- -1 on counterweight
- −1 between Boom Cylinders

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Arm holding valve

GUARDS AND COVERS

• Revolving frame undercover

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Triple Grouser Shoes
- 800mm track

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- 12 V power supply
- Cigar Lighter, Ashtray, Radio
- Rear view monitor system

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

• Preventive Maintenance (PM) service connector

Standard/option equipment may change. For more details, please consult your distributer.

KOMATSU®

KOMATSU®

РС210-10МО PC210LC-10MO







Spare Parts and Service



Sole Authorized Distributor for Nepal **CONTINENTAL TRADING ENTERPRISES PVT. LTD.**

Kathmandu, Gairidhara: 01-4426465 / 4426475 | SERVICE HOTLINE: 01-4426597

Dealer Network: Bardibas, Mahottari - Continental Trading Enterprises Pvt. Ltd.: 9814840452 Banepa - Maa Chandeshwori : 9841709905, Biratnagar - Shivam Earthmovers : 021-421118 / 421119

Pokhara - Autoways Pvt. Ltd.: 061-525231, 540356, Butwal - PSD Trading: 9857033394

Kohalpur - Dynamic Heavy Equipments: 9867222459

Dang, Nepalgunj & Dhangadi - Kisan Earthmovers Pvt. Ltd.: 082-560107, 081-565429 & 091-526009/416292





HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR



Photos may include optional equipment.

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 123 kW 165 HP/2000 min-1 Net: 123 kW 165 HP/2000 min-1

OPERATING WEIGHT

PC210-10M0: 20900 - 21400 kg PC210LC-10M0: 22000 - 23100 kg **BUCKET CAPACITY**

0.85 - 1.70 m3

Photos may include optional equipment.

+20%

Larger bucket capacity

• Powerful digging operation

• Improved travel performance

Higher stability

Higher Returns. Peace of Mind.



LOWER FUEL CONSUMPTION

(LCD) monitor

KOMTRAX Facility

- Reduction of fuel consumption by 20% (Compared to the PC210-8M0)
- Advanced management system of variable engine speed matching control

INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION **TECHNOLOGY (ICT) & KOMTRAX**

• Large high resolution Liquid Crystal Display

• Equipment Management & Monitoring System

- Viscous fan clutch system
- Reduction of hydraulic loss in pipes and tubes

LOWER MAINTENANCE COST

- Less maintenance time
- Early warning and detection system for preventive repairs
- Visually impressive maintenance information on the monitor screen

SAFETY & COMFORT

- Large comfortable cab
- ROPS Cab (ISO 12117-2) (Optional)
- Rear view monitor system (Optional)

Photos may include optional equipment.

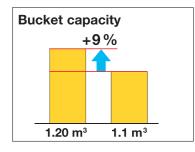
HIGHER PRODUCTIVITY



Increased Productivity

Large capacity buckets

Bucket selection up to 1.20 m3 are available. It can be matched for various applications.



Bucket capacity

1.00 m³ & 1.20 m³

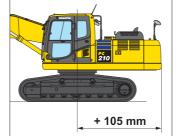
1.20 m³ ME bucket

By optimizing the shape of the side edge, it increases the penetration force. ME bucket profile increases production and optimises fuel consumption and wear reduction.

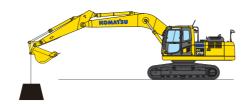


Excellent stability

Stability is substantially improved by increasing the weight of counterweight and extending the rear end radius compared with PC210-8M0. Lifting capacity is increased by 5%. This makes the



operation smooth even being equipped with large capacity bucket and heavy attachment.



Lifting capacity

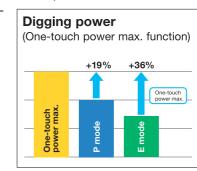
Compared to the PC210-8M0

5% up

Powerful digging operation

Digging in P mode has become powerful by improving hydraulic controls. When more power is needed, the

engine output is powered up by the onetouch power max. function and you can dig stronger. Increasing engine power achieves high performance.



Engine power

12% up (**123 kW 1**10 kW)

Compared to the PC210-8M0

One-touch power max. function

Digging force increases for 8.5 seconds of operation when left knob switch called one-touch power max switch is continuously pressed. You can normally use E mode to reduce fuel consumption. Use this function only when

needing extreme digging power temporarily, even more than P mode.

One-touch



Powerful travelling performance

Increased engine power makes the travelling in P mode powerful. When you are travelling on a high-load uphill or uneven terrain, PC210-10M0 gives you stable speed and smooth travelling. Improved travel performance in Granite and Marble application.

Traveling output power



Photos may include optional equipment.

LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION

Low Fuel Consumption Technology Engine management is enhanced. The variable speed matching of the engine, hydraulic pump and a viscous fan clutch guarantee efficiency and precision. Through the in-house development and production of main components, Komatsu has achieved great advancements in technology, providing high levels of performance and efficiency in virtually all applications. Fuel consumption -20% **Fuel consumption** 20% better (Compared to the PC210-8M0) PC210-10M0 PC210-8M0 Fuel consumption varies depending on job condition. Based on typical work pattern collected via KOMTRAX. Fuel consumption varies depending on job condition.

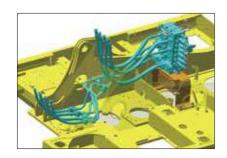
Improvement of engine Reduced fan speed and fan combustion efficiency drive loss

By optimizing the fuel injection control, the engine combustion efficiency has improved. This technology has achieved both high power output and low fuel consumption.

KOMATSU NEW ENGINE TECHNOLOGIES

Reduction of hydraulic pressure loss

The internal shape of the control valves, piping diameter and fitting shape have been thoroughly revised. With this improvement, hydraulic loss is reduced and contributes to low fuel consumption.



Enhanced engine-pump matching control

A speed controlled viscous fan

clutch and large diameter fan

engine efficien-

cy and reduces

engine power

requirements

when operating

in cooler tem-

peratures.

Large displacement hydraulic main pumps provide high flow output at low engine RPM. Further, by building in optimum matching of the engine and pump, it keeps high operability and workability. This technology achieves high production and low fuel consumption.

peed and fan Assists Energy-saving Operations

ECO gauge

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a glance on the right of the multi-function color monitor for environment-friendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO₂ emissions and efficient fuel consumption.

Komatsu SAA6D107E-1 engine



ECO gauge Idling caution

Idling caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.

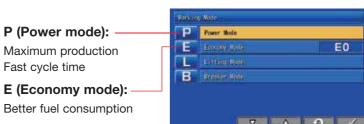


Photos may include optional equipment.

Fuel Saving Support Functions

Select a working mode that suits your purpose

In P mode, LARGE PRODUCTION and in E mode, LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION are implemented. E mode can be adjusted widely from E0 to E4 mode, and it adapts flexibly to customer's demands. Komatsu tuned each work mode precisely, ensuring high operability and workability. Just by selecting the work mode, it provides the best performance in demanding applications.



Fuel Consumption Fuel Consumption

Easy selectable E mode

Compared with the conventional model, E0 to E4 can be easily selected on the monitor.

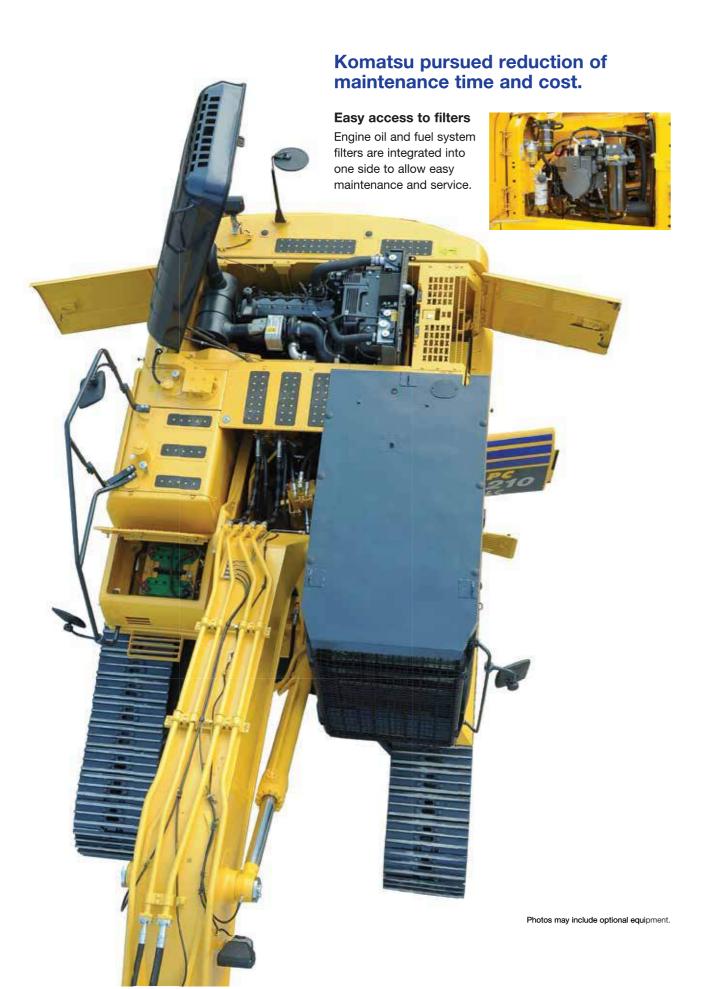
In addition to the above modes there are also the following modes. Please select the appropriate mode according to the application.





Working Mode	Application	Advantages
L	Lifting mode	Suitable attachment speed Lifting capacity is increased 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.
В	Breaker mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow

EASY MAINTENANCE, LOWER COST



Easy cleaning cooling unit

Cleanability of the cooling unit has been improved.

- Easier cleaning of the core by making the automatic air conditioner (A/C) capacitor a hinge structure
- Dust-proof net does not require tools for easy cleaning
- Making oil cooler a single piece from 2 pieces, no more space accumulating dust





Easy oil sampling

Easy oil sampling ports are added. It is important to get sample that was agitated properly. Using this equipment will help in accurate analysis.



Minimize breaking of circle grease nipple

The grease nipple of the circle is embedded for protection. It is

irrefrangible structure even if wood debris or dusts are coiled around a swing circle.



Clogging sensor for breaker line



Easy maintenance time management

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.



Extended replacement interval of hydraulic oil filter

The replacement interval of the hydraulic oil filter element is extended by 2.5 times. It contributes to reduction of maintenance cost.



Easy to know maintenance time when using breaker

In addition to the above functions, it monitors the breaker usage time. Since the replacement time will be changed depending on the breaker usage time, monitor can notify the optimum replacement time.



Detect abnormality of hydraulic circuit clogging sensor for hydraulic oil as standard

When the hydraulic oil filter is clogged, the caution message pops up on the monitor to notify replacing the filter. This helps prevent the breakdowns and reduce repair cost.

Fuel line contamination prevention

Fuel pre-filter removes water and contaminants in the fuel to prevent fuel problems (with built in priming pump).

Even in dusty places, by installing

Pre-cleaner for dusty condition

pre-cleaner coupled with the large air cleaner, the frequency of cleaning the air cleaner will be reduced. Durability has also improved by adopting new high efficiency pre-cleaner.



Battery disconnect switch

A battery disconnect switch allows a technician to disconnect the power supply and lock out before servicing or maintenance of the machine. Also, minimize discharge of the battery during long-term non operation. System operating lamp indicates the timing when switch was disconnected to prevent controller failures.



Other Features

- · Easy cleaning drain port of fuel tank
- · Improved drainability of hydraulic oil and fuel
- · Easy to check level of hydraulic oil
- Blow-by pressure detection
- Fuel line contamination prevention

HIGHER DURABILITY

High Strength Work Equipment & Frames to work with large size bucket. It has Durability to Withstand Any Application.

Enhanced work equipment
Komatsu has built work equipment
with increased durability in any
application. It is a structure that
endures the harsh test and incorporates highly accurate controled
welding technology. Ultrasonic
inspection ensures quality.

Additional reinforcement
plate

Mounting seats for
quick coupler piping

No need for additional welding
when installing attachment piping

or quick coupler piping in work

equipment.





Photos may include optional equipment.

Reinforced revolving frame

Main components are installed to revolving frame. Revolving frame is strengthened to withstand the stresses imposed by severe conditions at site. This tempered frame supports stable operation.

Bush is added in the boom foot mounting area in revolving frame to increase its durability.



Strengthened swing circle

Swing circle with improved durability supports stable operation in any severe jobsite.

Reliable Komatsu components

All of the major components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu.

Track Frame Reinforcement

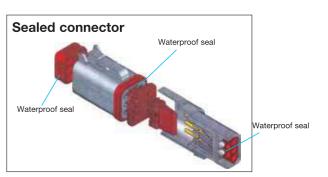
The reinforcement prevents the idler guide from opening and subsequently damaging the undercarriage components.



Highly reliable electronic devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

- Controllers Sensors Connectors
- Heat resistant wiring



HD Undercarriage (Optional)*

HD (Heavy Duty) Undercarriage enhances life of undercarriage especially track shoe for Granite and Marble applications.

* only available for PC210LC-10M0 (HD)

Steady frame structure

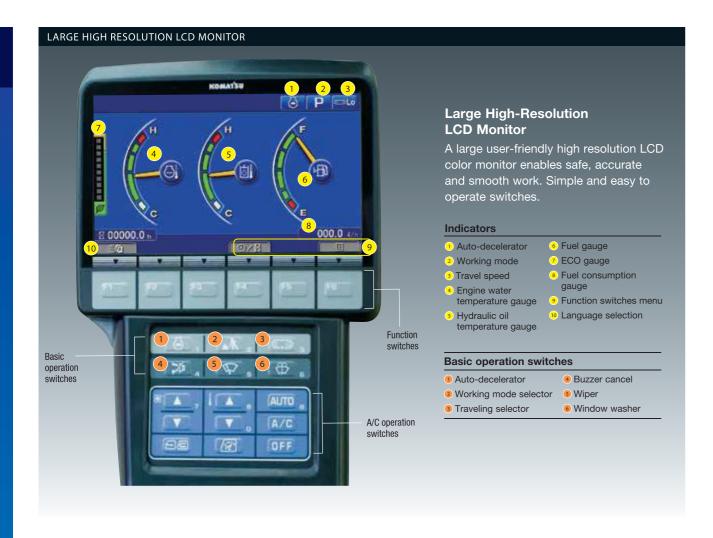
The revolving frame, center frame and undercarriage are designed by using the most advanced three-dimensional CAD and Finite Element Method (FEM*) analysis technology.

* FEM analysis is a stress simulation method using a computer.

Full length track roller guards (Optional)

The roller guards cover the entire track roller and prevent stones from getting lodged in track rollers, possible derailment of tracks and wear on track links and track rollers during turning.

ICT & KOMTRAX



Supports Efficient Operation

The main screen displays advice for promoting energysaving operations from time to time. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs,



ECO guidance



ECO guidance records

ECO guidance menu



Operation records

Equipment Management & Monitoring System

Monitor function

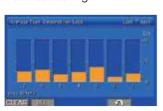
Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.

Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Trouble data memory function

Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.



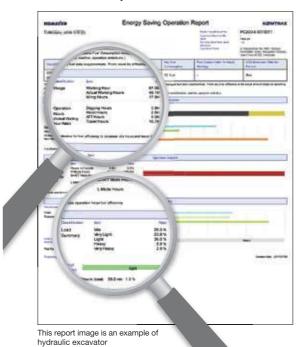
Average fuel consumption logs

KOMTRAX

Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data for optimizing fleet efficiency.

Energy Savings Operation Report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-savings operation report based on operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you run the business efficiently.



Equipment Management Support

Through the web application, a variety of search parameters are available to quickly find information about specific machines based on key factors. Moreover, KOMTRAX finds out machines with problems from your fleet and shows you through an optimal interface.



The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

Optimum Strategy for Efficient Work

With the detailed information that KOMTRAX provides, you can manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make informed decisions and long-term strategy.



SAFETY & COMFORT

Safety is top priority at the jobsite

Equipped with ROPS complied cabin* The machine is equipped with a ROPS complied cabin as standard equipment. The ROPS cab has high shock-absorption performance, featuring excellent

Combined with the retractable seat belt, the ROPS cab protects the operator in case of toppling and against falling objects.

*Certification pending from statutory authority

durability and impact strength.

Gas-assisted damper cylinders for opening engine hood

Gas-assisted damper cylinders help opening the engine hood with light force. Lock bar is also equipped. This equipment will support during maintenance and repair.



Thermal guard, fan guard

Preventing direct contact with high temperature parts or the finger being caught by fan when checking around the engine, by installing thermal guards and fan guard.





Rear view monitor system (Optional)

A new rear view monitor system display has a rear view camera image that is continuously displayed together with the gauges and important vehicle information. This enables the operator to carry out work while easily checking the surrounding area. Even if it is on another screen, it changes to the rear camera image at the same time as any operation lever is operated.

Slip-resistant plates

Highly durable slip-resistant plates to ensure long term superior traction.



- Cab guard:
- Front strengthened meshguard (Optional)
- Top guard (Optional)
- Lock lever
- Pump/Engine room partition
- Large side view, rear and sidewise mirrors
- Large handrail



Ensuring operator's comfort, it contributes to increased safety and productivity.

Suspension seat

Suspension seat with weight adjustment function is offered as standard equipment. This seat can reduce fatigue even after long hours of operation.

Pressurized cab

Pressurizing inside the cab minimizes the dust entering from outside. This keeps the cab clean.

Low cab noise

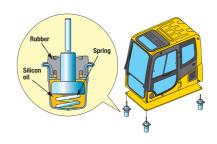
With relatively low noise, you can operate without stress. Ambient noise is also reduced, thus reducing the stress of workers around.

Automatic A/C

It adjusts automatically to a comfortable temperature throughout the year, even in hot or cold areas.

Low vibration with cab damper mounting

The cab damper mounting combined with high rigidity deck aids in vibration reduction at operator seat.



Auxiliary



- 12 V power supply
- Magazine box
- Cool & hot box
- Luggage box



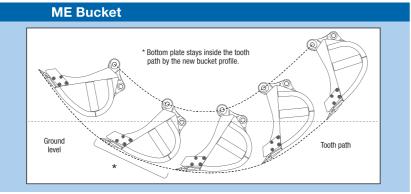
CHOICE OF BUCKETS

ATTACHMENT TOOLS

Komatsu buckets are engineered well with a fine profile and cutting edge to handle toughest jobs and gives best productivity. Komatsu has a line-up of various buckets for your jobsite conditions.

High Productivity by Low-resistant Excavation

The new Ideal bucket profile produces lower resistance inside & outside bucket and production will be greatly increased.



Category and Features

Category	Load / Wear / Soil (Application)	Image
General Purpose GP	Load Machine power is mostly medium, but occasionally high. Bucket movements are smooth with minor shock load. Bucket penetrates easily. Wear Material is lightly abrasive. Some sand may be medium abrasive. Soil Mostly loose sand, gravel and finely broken materials.	
More Efficient "ME"	Load High Productivity by low-resistant excavation. Medium, but continuos load. Wear Material is not abrasive. Soil Loose soil, sand & clay.	
Heavy Duty HD	Load Machine power is high during majority of the work. Medium, but continuous shock load. Wear Material is abrasive. Light scratch marks can be seen at the bucket. Soil Limestone, shot rock, compact mix of sand, gravel and clay. Durability Side shroud, lip shroud, wear plates were added for durability improvement.	
Extra Heavy Duty XHD	Load Machine power is high during most of the work, often at maximum. Dynamic shock loads are frequent and machine may shake. Wear Material is very abrasive. Large scratch marks are visible and, or deform metal. Works within heaps of rock with occasional un-shot rock and rock boulders. Soil Granite, basalt, quartz sand, compact and sticky clay. Durability Side shroud, lip shroud, wear plates were added for durability improvement.	

Bucket Line-up

		Width (mm)				Boom + Arm (m)		
Category	Capacity		With	Weight*	Tooth Quantity	PC210-10M0	PC210LC-10M0	
outegory	(m³)	Side Cutters	Side Cutters	(kg)		5.7+2.4	5.7+2.4	5.7+2.9
LD	1.70	1575	1575	865	-	Δ	Δ	×
GP	1.00	1242	1358	810	5	0	0	0
GP	1.10	1348	1463	870	5		0	
ME	1.20	1200	1310	945	5	0	0	
HD	1.00	1305	1405	932	5	0	0	×
XHD	1.00	1305	1405	1023	5	×	0	×

* With side cutters \bigcirc : General purpose use, density up to 1.8 t/m³ \square : General purpose use, density up to 1.6t/m³ \triangle Light duty work, material weight up to 1.2 t/m³

Komatsu Genuine Attachment Tools

Komatsu recommends a wide range of attachment tools to suit customers' specific applications.

Hydraulic Breaker

The Hydraulic Breaker is an attachment tool used for crushing rock beds and paved surfaces, demolishing concrete structures, etc. The large gas chamber, ideal gas pressure ratio, and long-stroke piston deliver a powerful impact force. Since the breaker unit does not require an accumulator, the number of parts has been reduced, resulting in lower maintenance costs.

Model typ	Model type		
Working weight Oil flow	kg I/min	1780 160 - 200	
Operating pressure	MPa	14 - 18	
Impact rate	bpm	450 - 630	
Chisel diameter	mm	ø 135	

- Anti-Blank Blow System
- Accumulator FREE design
- High Impact Energy

• High Reliability & Durability • Low Operating Cost

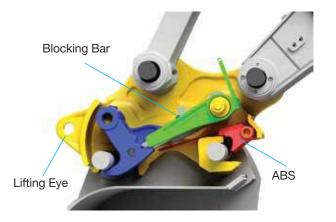
Hydraulic Quick Coupler

Hydraulic Quick Coupler is used to facilitate frequent changes between attachments such as bucket, breaker etc., thus, saves time and reduces operator fatigue. The Twin Lock series Hydraulic Quick Coupler is completely automatic and with Automatic Blocking System makes the operation easy and safe.

- Fully Automatic (Hydraulic coupling)
- Twin Lock Mechanism
- Automatic Blocking System (ABS)
- Blocking Bar
- Lifting Eye
- High strength Cast design







PRODUCT SUPPORT

SPECIFICATIONS





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, Komatsu Distributor provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

Komatsu Distributor will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.

Technical support

Komatsu Distributor offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection



Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by Komatsu Distributor's strong nationwide network, parts outlets and service centres.

Parts availability

Komatsu Distributor is available for regular and emergency requirements of the customers for supply of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Repair & maintenance service

Komatsu Distributor offers quality repair service and periodical maintenance to the customers, while utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.



ENGINE

ModelKomatsu SAA6D107E-1Type.Water-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injectionAspirationTurbocharged, aftercooledNumber of cylinders6Bore.107 mmStroke124 mmPiston displacement6.69 LHorsepower:
SAE J1995 Gross 123 kW 165 HP
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349 Net 123 kW 165 HP Rated rpm
Fan drive method for radiator cooling Mechanical with viscous fan clutch
Governor All-speed control, electronic
Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is



117.2 kW 157.2 HP.

EU Stage 3A emission equivalent.

HYDRAULICS

Type. HydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical Intelligence New

implement circuits	
Travel circuit	
Swing circuit28.9 MPa 295 kg/cm ²	
Pilot circuit	
Hydraulic cylinders:	
(Number of cylinders – bore x stroke x rod diameter)	

Bucket for 2.41 m arm. 1–115 mm x 1120 mm x 80 mm for 2.93 m arm. 1–115 mm x 1120 mm x 80 mm

SWING SYSTEM

Drive method
Swing reductionPlanetary gear
Swing circle lubrication Grease-bathed
Service brake
Holding brake/Swing lock Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame
Track frame
Seal of track Sealed track
Track adjuster
Number of shoes (Each side):
PC210-10M0
PC210LC-10M0
Number of carrier rollers 2 each side
Number of track rollers (Each side):
PC210-10M0
PC210LC-10M0



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILLING)

Fuel tank	 	 	400 L
Coolant	 	 2	1.8 L
Engine	 	 2	23.1 L
Final drive (Each side)	 	 	3.3 L
Swing drive	 	 	5.3 L
Hydraulic tank	 	 	135 L



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostation
Maximum drawbar pull	178 kN 18200 kg
Gradeability	70%, 35
Maximum travel speed:	High 5.5 km/l
(Auto-shift)	Mid 4.1 km/l
(Auto-shift)	Low
Service brake	Hydraulic locl
Parking brake	Mechanical disc brake

19



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 5700 mm one-piece boom, 2410 mm arm, 1.2 m³ PC210LC-10M0 and 1.0 m³ PC210-10M0 backhoe bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

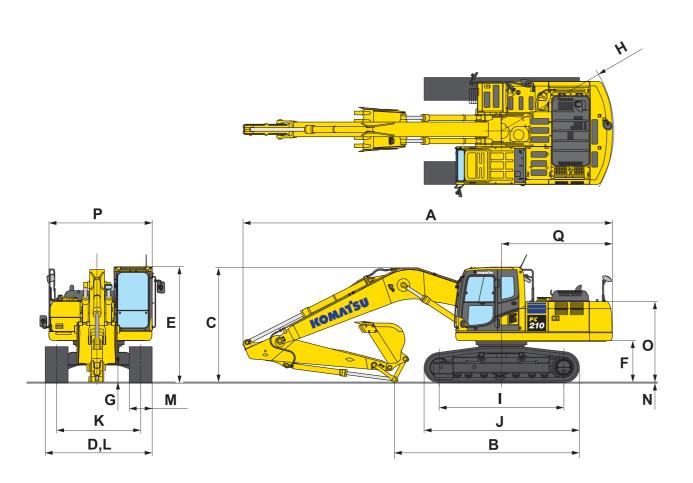
	PC210	-10M0	PC210LC-10M0		PC210LC-10M0 (HD)		
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure	Operating Weight	Ground Operating Ground Pressure Weight Pressure			
600 mm	20900 kg	51.9 kPa 0.53 kg/cm ²	22000 kg		23100 kg		
800 mm	-	-	227000		-	-	



DIMENSIONS

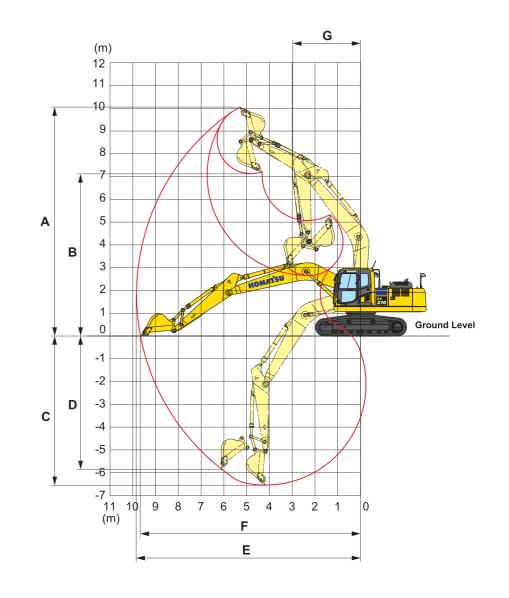
Arm	ı Length	2410 mm	2925 mm
Α	Overall length	9600 mm	9530 mm
В	Length on ground (Transport): PC210-10M0 PC210LC-10M0	5700 mm 5885 mm	5000 mm
C	Overall height (To top of boom)	3190 mm	2970 mm

Mod	lel	PC210-10M0	PC210LC-10M0
D	Overall width	2800 mm	2980 mm
Ε	Overall height (To top of cab)	3045 mm	3045 mm
F	Ground clearance, counterweight	1085 mm	1085 mm
G	Ground clearance (Minimum)	440 mm	440 mm
Н	Tail swing radius	2900 mm	2900 mm
1	Track length on ground	3275 mm	3655 mm
J	Track length	4070 mm	4450 mm
K	Track gauge	2200 mm	2380 mm
L	Width of crawler	2800 mm	2980 mm
M	Shoe width	600 mm	600 mm
N	Grouser height	26 mm	26 mm
0	Machine cab height	2095 mm	2095 mm
Р	Machine cab width	2710 mm	2710 mm
Q	Distance, swing center to rear end	2860 mm	2860 mm



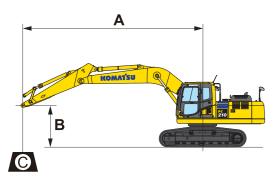


Arm Length	1	2410 mm	2925 mm
Α	Max. digging height	9830 mm	10000 mm
В	Max. dumping height	6960 mm	7110 mm
C	Max. digging depth	6000 mm	6620 mm
D	Max. vertical wall digging depth	5080 mm	5980 mm
E	Max. digging reach	9390 mm	9875 mm
F	Max. digging reach at ground level	9195 mm	9700 mm
G	Min. swing radius	3080 mm	3040 mm
SAE J 1179 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	138 kN 14100 kg	138 kN 14100 kg
SAE J 11	Arm crowd force at power max.	124 kN 12600 kg	101 kN 10300 kg
ISO 6015 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	149 kN 15200 kg	149 kN 15200 kg
ISO 601	Arm crowd force at power max.	127 kN 13000 kg	108 kN 11000 kg





LIFTING CAPACITY WITH LIFTING MODE



- A: Reach from swing center
- B: Arm top pin height
- C: Lifting capacity
- Cf: Rating over front
- Cs: Rating over side
- ⊕: Rating at maximum reach

Conditions:

- 5700 mm one-piece boom
- Shoe width:
- —PC210-10M0 600 mm triple grouser

PC210-10	OMO .	Arm: 2410 mn	n Witho	ut bucket	Shoe: 600	mm triple gro	user						
_ A	MAX	€ N	/AX	7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	m	3.0	m	1.5	m
В	IVIAA	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
7.5 m	5.49 m	*5900 kg	5250 kg										
6.0 m	6.71 m	5500 kg	3750 kg			*5800 kg	4550 kg	*6050 kg	*6050 kg				
4.5 m	7.44 m	4600 kg	3100 kg			*6300 kg	4400 kg	*7400 kg	6800 kg	*10200 kg	*10200 kg		
3.0 m	7.81 m	4150 kg	2800 kg	4450 kg	3000 kg	6250 kg	4200 kg	*9300 kg	6300 kg				
1.5 m	7.88 m	4000 kg	2700 kg	4350 kg	2900 kg	6000 kg	3950 kg	9250 kg	5850 kg				
0 m	7.67 m	4150 kg	2750 kg	4250 kg	2850 kg	5850 kg	3850 kg	9050 kg	5650 kg				
–1.5 m	7.13 m	4550 kg	3050 kg			5800 kg	3800 kg	9000 kg	5650 kg	*12200 kg	10750 kg		
–3.0 m	6.19 m	5650 kg	3700 kg			5900 kg	3850 kg	9100 kg	5750 kg	*14300 kg	10950 kg		

^{*} Load is limited by hydraulic capacity rather than tipping. Ratings are based on ISO standard No.10567. Rated loads do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lift capacity or 75% of tipping load.

Condition:

- Shoe width:
- -PC210LC-10M0 600 mm triple grouser

PC210LC	-10M0	Arm: 2410	mm Wi	thout bucket	Shoe: 6	00 mm triple o	grouser						
A	MAX	€ 1	ЛАХ	7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	m	3.0) m	1.5	i m
В	IVIAX	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
7.5 m	5.49 m	*5900 kg	5850 kg										
6.0 m	6.71 m	*5500 kg	4200 kg			*5800 kg	5050 kg	*6050 kg	*6050 kg				
4.5 m	7.44 m	5400 kg	3500 kg			*6300 kg	4900 kg	*7400 kg	*7400 kg	*10200 kg	*10200 kg		
3.0 m	7.81 m	4900 kg	3150 kg	5250 kg	3350 kg	*7150 kg	4700 kg	*9300 kg	7100 kg				
1.5 m	7.88 m	4800 kg	3050 kg	5150 kg	3250 kg	7200 kg	4450 kg	*10900 kg	6650 kg				
0 m	7.67 m	4900 kg	3100 kg	5050 kg	3200 kg	7000 kg	4350 kg	11100 kg	6450 kg				
−1.5 m	7.13 m	5450 kg	3450 kg			7000 kg	4300 kg	11050 kg	6450 kg	*12200 kg	*12200 kg		
−3.0 m	6.19 m	6750 kg	4200 kg	·		7050 kg	4350 kg	*10400 kg	6550 kg	*14300 kg	12700 kg		

PC210LC	-10M0	Arm: 2925	mm Wi	thout bucket	Shoe: 6	00 mm triple	grouser						
A	MAX	1 😥	MAX	7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	i m	3.0) m	1.5	i m
В	IVIAX	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
7.5 m	6.15 m	*3850 kg	*3850 kg			*4450 kg	*4450 kg						
6.0 m	7.26 m	*3600 kg	*3600 kg			*5150 kg	5100 kg						
4.5 m	7.93 m	*3550 kg	3100 kg	5300 kg	3400 kg	*5750 kg	4900 kg	*6500 kg	*6500 kg				
3.0 m	8.29 m	*3700 kg	2800 kg	5200 kg	3300 kg	*6600 kg	4650 kg	*8450 kg	7150 kg				
1.5 m	8.36 m	*3950 kg	2700 kg	5050 kg	3200 kg	7100 kg	4400 kg	*10250 kg	6600 kg				
0 m	8.15 m	4400 kg	2750 kg	4950 kg	3100 kg	6900 kg	4200 kg	10950 kg	6300 kg	*7000 kg	*7000 kg		
−1.5 m	7.65 m	4800 kg	3000 kg	4950 kg	3050 kg	6800 kg	4150 kg	10850 kg	6250 kg	*11450 kg	*11450 kg	*7250 kg	*7250 kg
-3.0 m	6.78 m	5750 kg	3550 kg			6850 kg	4200 kg	*10700 kg	6300 kg	*15200 kg	12300 kg	*11900 kg	*11900 kg
–4.5 m	5.37 m	*7000 kg	5100 kg					*8700 kg	6550 kg	*12200 kg	*12200 kg		

^{*} Load is limited by hydraulic capacity rather than tipping. Ratings are based on ISO standard No.10567. Rated loads do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lift capacity or 75% of tipping load.



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

ENGINE

- Air pre-cleaner
- Automatic engine warm-up system
- Coolant filter
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D107E-1
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Fan clutch
- Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net
- Large capacity fuel pre-filter

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Alternator, 24 V/60 A, brushless
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/88 Ah
- Battery disconnect switch with operation lamp
- Starting motor, 24 V/4.5 kW
- Working light, 2 (Boom and R.H.)

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Boom holding valve
- Clogging sensor for hydraulic return filter
- Power maximizing system

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

-1 on counterweight

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

GUARDS AND COVERS

• Track frame undercover

• Triple Grouser Shoes

• Track roller guards (Full length)

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

Bolt-on top guard

Cab accessories

Rain visor

Sun visor

-800mm track (PC210LC-10M0)

UNDERCARRIAGE

Working lights

-2 on cab

• Inline filter

 Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- Working mode selection system
- Service Valve
- Ready to mount Quick Coupler

• Amber beacon lamp on cab roof

• Clogging sensor for breaker return filter

· Heavy duty revolving frame undercover

GUARDS AND COVERS

- Fan quard structure
- Revolving frame deck guard (Only in PC210LC-10M0)

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Track guiding guard, center section
- Track roller
- -PC210-10M0: 7 each side
- -PC210LC-10M0: 9 each side
- Track shoe
- –PC210-10M0: 600 mm triple grouser–PC210LC-10M0: 600 mm triple
- grouser

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- 12 V power supply
- Auto A/C with defroster
- AUX equipped with radio
- Equipment Management Monitoring System
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Rear view mirrors (R.H., L.H., rear, sidewise)
- Suspension seat

Cab front guard

-Full height guard

WORK EQUIPMENT

ATTACHMENTS

Quick coupler

connector

Hydraulic breaker

Arms

Rear view monitor systemROPS cab (ISO 12117-2)

Top guard level 2 (ISO 10262)Front guard level 2 (ISO 10262)

-2925 mm arm assembly

(Only in PC210LC-10M0)

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

• Preventive Maintenance (PM) service

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

Oil sampling port (Engine & hydraulic)

OTHER EQUIPMENT

- Blow-by sensor
- CounterweightElectric horn
- KOMTRAX
- Rear reflector
- Slip-resistant plates

For lead time, please consult your distributor.

L&T CMB AFTER SALES SUPPORT NETWORK

KOMATSU®

PC210LC-10M0 SUPER LONG FRONT

Head Office Zones Territories Dealers 1800 833 9990 **Dealer Outlets L&T Service Centers** Unified program for sales & after sales support. Product improvement is a continuous process. Specifications given in this publication are therefore subject to change without notice.

Photographs depicted may be of optional equipment

Printed on 01-2022 www.komatsuindia.in

KOMATSU®

Marketed & Serviced by:



L&T Construction & Mining Machinery

Larsen & Toubro Limited

1st Floor Lakshminarayan Complex, 10/1 Palace Road, Bengaluru- 560 052 Tel: 080 40401700 / 900

E-mail: ceb@larsentoubro.com www.lntcmb.com

Zonal Offices:

Delhi (011) 40819500 Nagpur (0712) 6606441/2260025 **Jaipur** (0141) 4385900

Kolkata (033) 44002433/22831442 Hyderabad (040) 47575064

Pune (020) 48544259 Chennai (044) 40706864

CIN: L99999MH1946PLC004768

Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. KOMATSU is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR



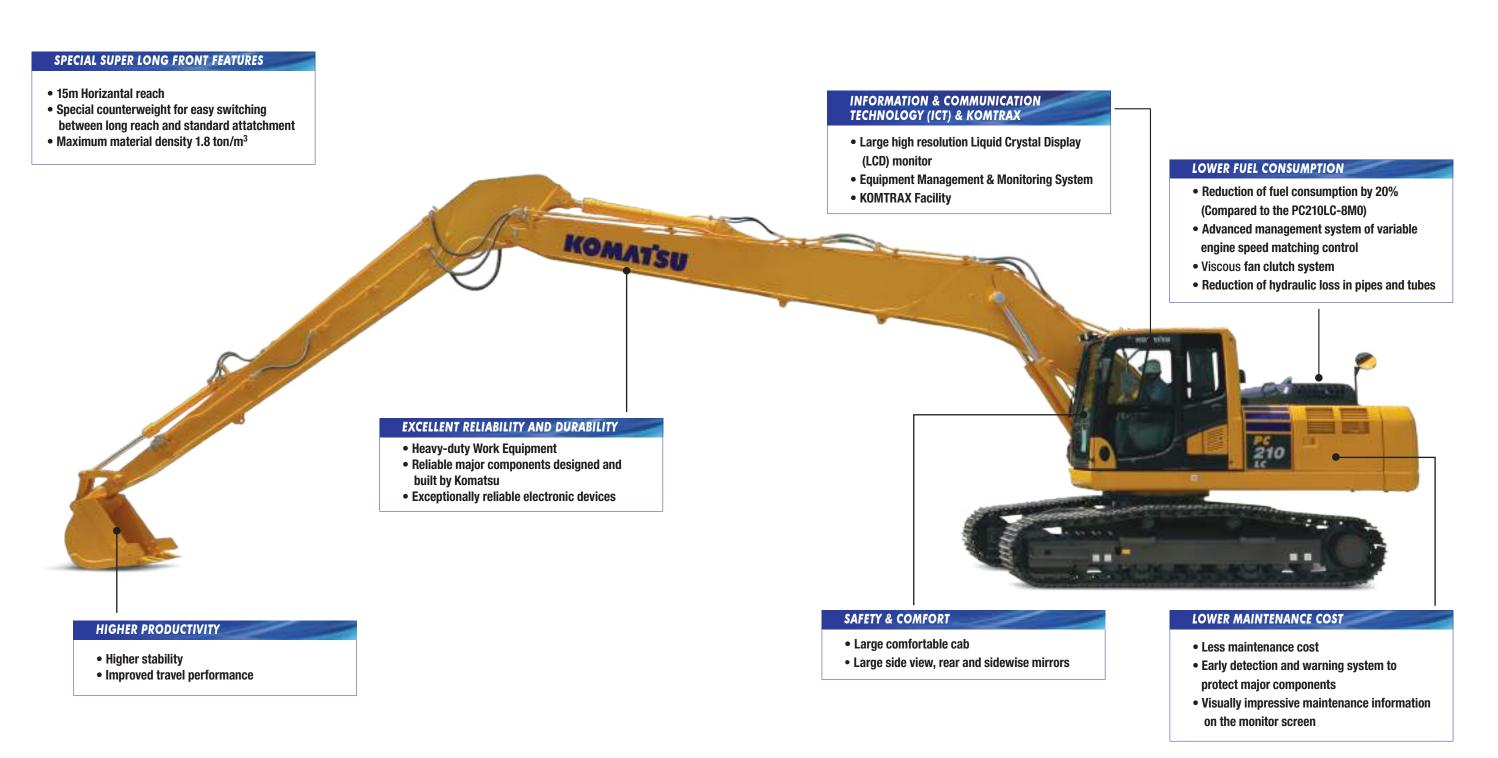
Photos may include optional equipment.

OPERATING WEIGHT: 24.5 - 25.1 T

GROSS HP: 123 kW 165 HP/2000 min-1 NET HP: 123 kW 165 HP/2000 min-1

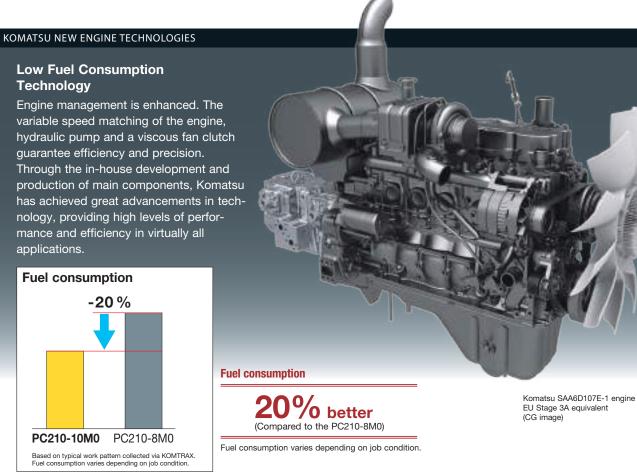
BUCKET CAPACITY: 0.5 m³

Higher Returns. Peace of Mind.



Photos may include optional equipment.

LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION

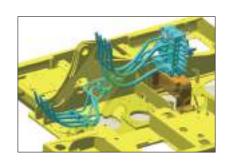


Improvement of engine combustion efficiency

By optimizing the fuel injection control, the engine combustion efficiency has improved. This technology has achieved both high power output and low fuel consumption.

Reduction of hydraulic pressure loss

The internal shape of the control valves, piping diameter and fitting shape have been thoroughly revised. With this improvement, hydraulic loss is reduced and contributes to low fuel consumption.



Reduced fan speed and fan drive loss

A speed controlled viscous fan clutch and large diameter fan improves

engine efficiency and reduces engine power requirements when operating in cooler temperatures.



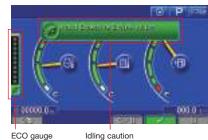
Enhanced engine-pump matching control

Large displacement hydraulic main pumps provide high flow output at low engine RPM. Further, by building in optimum matching of the engine and pump, it keeps high operability and workability. This technology achieves high production and low fuel consumption.

Assists Energy-saving Operations

ECO gauge

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a glance on the right of the multi-function color monitor for environment-friendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO₂ emissions and efficient fuel consumption.

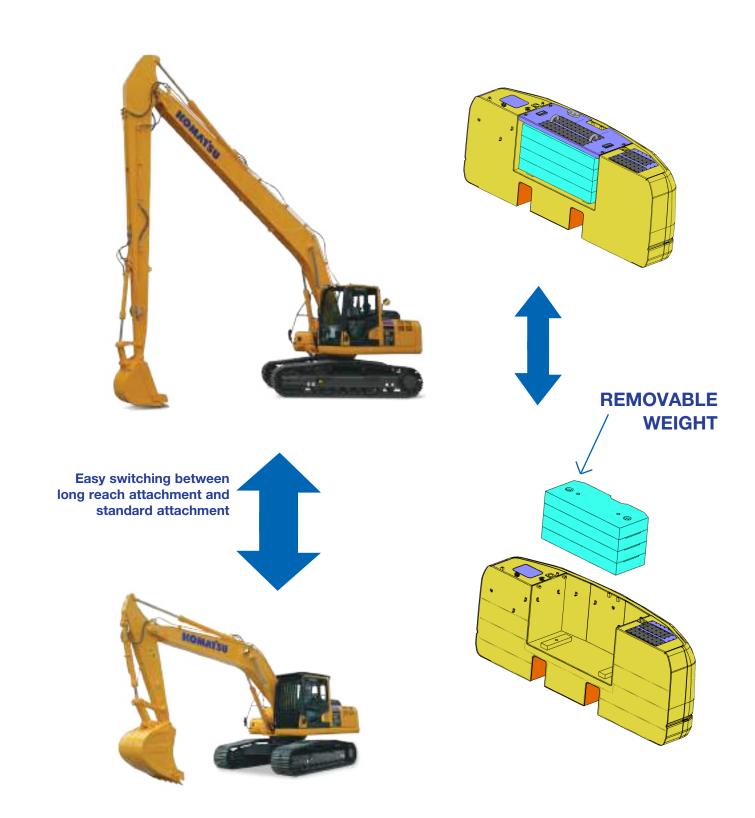


Idling caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.

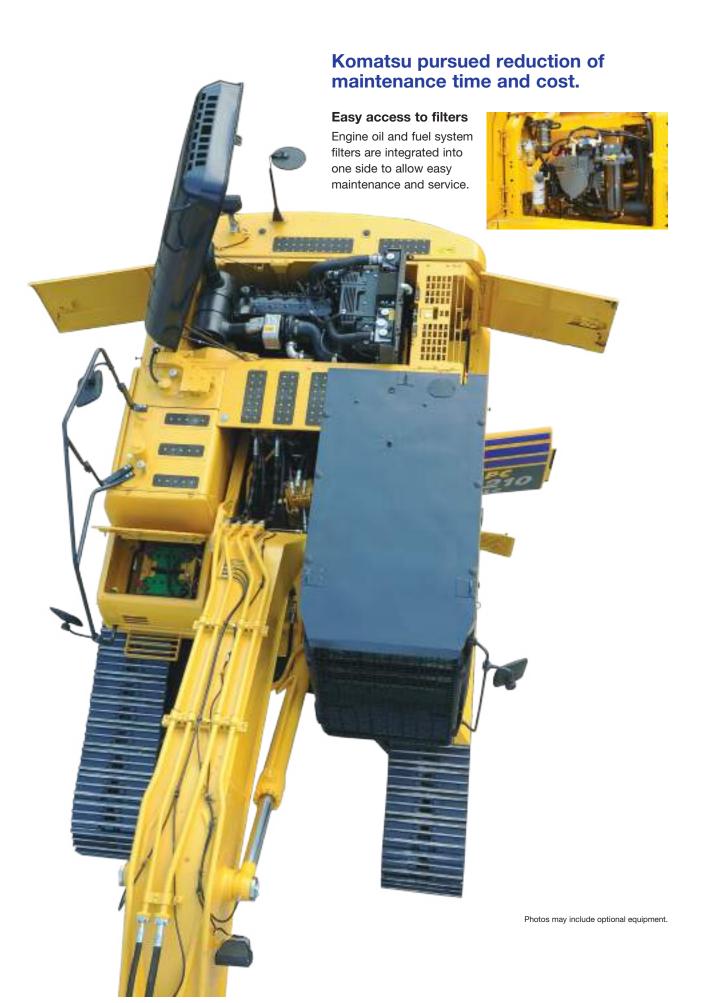
Convertible Counterweight

Equipped with Split type Counterweight consisting of fixed counterweight and additional counterweight, the machine can be used with standard Work Equipment by removing of additional counterweight.



Photos may include optional equipment

EASY MAINTENANCE, LOWER COST



Easy cleaning cooling unit

Cleanability of the cooling unit has been improved.

- Easier cleaning of the core by making the automatic air conditioner (A/C) capacitor a hinge structure
- Dust-proof net does not require tools for easy cleaning
- Making oil cooler a single piece from 2 pieces, no more space accumulating dust





Easy oil sampling

Easy oil sampling ports are added. It is important to get sample that was agitated properly. Using this equipment will help in accurate analysis.



Minimize breaking of circle grease nipple

The grease nipple of the circle is embedded for protection. It is

irrefrangible structure even if wood debris or dusts are coiled around a swing circle.



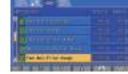
Clogging sensor for breaker line



Clogging hydraulic oil filter caution

Easy maintenance time management

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.



Extended replacement interval of hydraulic oil filter

The replacement interval of the hydraulic oil filter element is extended by 2.5 times. It contributes to reduction of maintenance cost.



Easy to know maintenance time when using breaker

In addition to the above functions, it monitors the breaker usage time. Since the replacement time will be changed depending on the breaker usage time, monitor can notify the optimum replacement time.



Detect abnormality of hydraulic circuit clogging sensor for hydraulic oil as standard

When the hydraulic oil filter is clogged, the caution message pops up on the monitor to notify replacing the filter. This helps prevent the breakdowns and reduce repair cost.

Fuel line contamination prevention

contaminants in the fuel to prevent fuel problems (with built in priming pump).



Pre-cleaner for dusty condition

Even in dusty places, by installing pre-cleaner coupled with the large air cleaner, the frequency of cleaning the air cleaner will be reduced. Durability has also improved by adopting new high efficiency pre-cleaner.



Battery disconnect switch

A battery disconnect switch allows a technician to disconnect the power supply and lock out before servicing or maintenance of the machine. Also, minimize discharge of the battery during long-term non operation. System operating lamp indicates the timing when switch was disconnected to prevent controller failures.

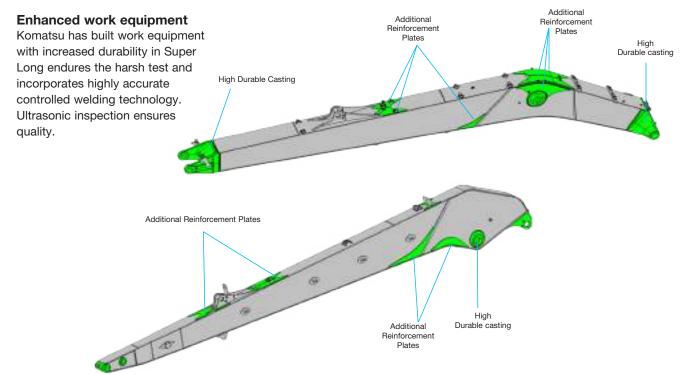


Other Features

- Easy cleaning drain port of fuel tank
- · Improved drainability of hydraulic oil and fuel
- Easy to check level of hydraulic oil
- Blow-by pressure detection

HIGHER DURABILITY

High Strength Work Equipment & Frames to work with large size bucket. Attachment built to provide superior durability in wide range of long reach applications







Photos may include optional equipment.

Reinforced revolving frame

Main components are installed to revolving frame. Revolving frame is strengthened to withstand the stresses imposed by severe conditions at site. This tempered frame supports stable operation.



Strengthened swing circle

Swing circle with improved durability supports stable operation in any severe jobsite.

Reliable Komatsu components

All of the major components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu.

Track Frame Reinforcement

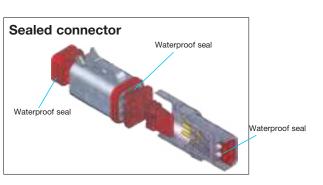
The reinforcement prevents the idler guide from opening and subsequently damaging the undercarriage components.



Highly reliable electronic devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

- Controllers Sensors Connectors
- Heat resistant wiring



Steady frame structure

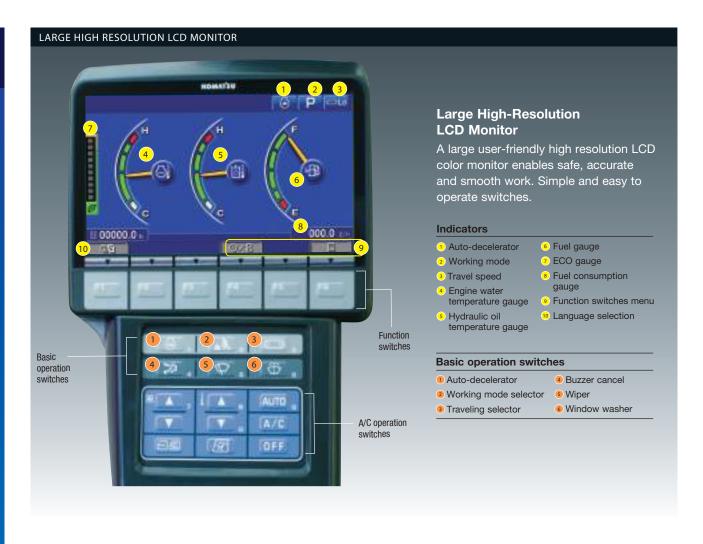
The revolving frame, center frame and undercarriage are designed by using the most advanced three-dimensional CAD and Finite Element Method (FEM*) analysis technology.

* FEM analysis is a stress simulation method using a computer.

Full length track roller guards (Optional)

The roller guards cover the entire track roller and prevent stones from getting lodged in track rollers, possible derailment of tracks and wear on track links and track rollers during turning.

ICT & KOMTRAX



Supports Efficient Operation

The main screen displays advice for promoting energysaving operations from time to time. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs,



ECO guidance



ECO guidance records

ECO guidance menu

a	
н	
п	
ı	
R	
w	

Operation records

Equipment Management & Monitoring System

Monitor function

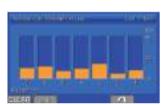
Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.

Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Trouble data memory function

Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.



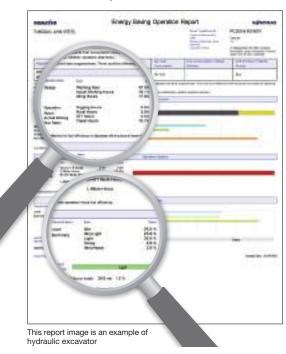
Average fuel consumption logs

KOMTRAX

Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data for optimizing fleet efficiency.

Energy Savings Operation Report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-savings operation report based on operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you run the business efficiently.



Equipment Management Support

Through the web application, a variety of search parameters are available to quickly find information about specific machines based on key factors. Moreover, KOMTRAX finds out machines with problems from your fleet and shows you through an optimal interface.



The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

11

Optimum Strategy for Efficient Work

With the detailed information that KOMTRAX provides, you can manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make informed decisions and long-term strategy.



SAFETY & COMFORT

Gas-assisted damper cylinders for opening engine hood

Gas-assisted damper cylinders help opening the engine hood with light force. Lock bar is also equipped. This equipment will support during maintenance and repair.



Thermal guard, fan guard

Preventing direct contact with high temperature parts or the finger being caught by fan when checking around the engine, by installing thermal guards and fan guard.



Lock lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement.

Neutral start function allows machine to be started only in lock position.





Photos may include optional equipment.

Large Side-view, Rear and Sidewise Mirrors

Large mirrors to meet all-round visibility requirements







Slip-resistant plates

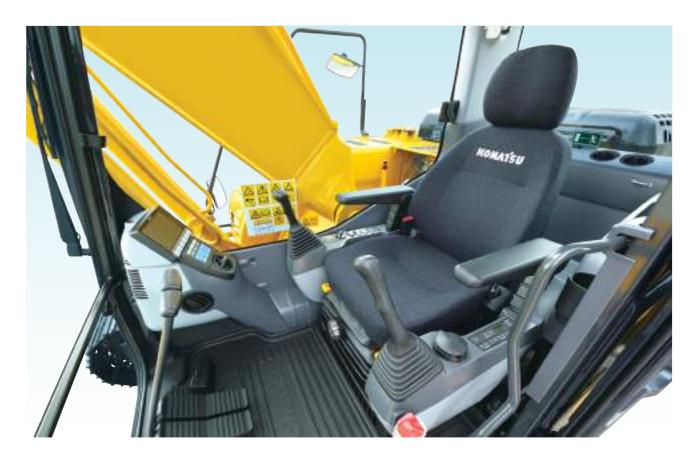
Highly durable slip-resistant plates to ensure long term superior traction.



• Large handrail



- Cab guard:
- Front strengthened meshguard (Optional)
- Top guard (Optional)
- Pump/Engine room partition



Ensuring operator's comfort, it contributes to increased safety and productivity.

Suspension seat

Suspension seat with weight adjustment function is offered as standard equipment. This seat can reduce fatigue even after long hours of operation.

Pressurized cab

Pressurizing inside the cab minimizes the dust entering from outside. This keeps the cab clean.

Low cab noise

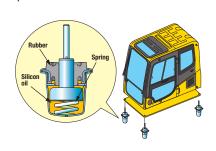
With relatively low noise, you can operate without stress. Ambient noise is also reduced, thus reducing the stress of workers around.

Automatic A/C

It adjusts automatically to a comfortable temperature throughout the year, even in hot or cold areas.

Low vibration with cab damper mounting

The cab damper mounting combined with high rigidity deck aids in vibration reduction at operator seat.



Auxiliary



- 12 V power supply
- Magazine box
- Cool & hot box
- Luggage box



MACHINE CARE PROGRAM

Suraksha-10000 / MCP4

4 YEARS / 10,000 HOURS*

Extended Powertrain Warranty

- Protection from unexpected expenses and cash flow
- 2. Trouble free ownership experience with higher machine availability
- 3. Lower life cycle cost
- 4. Lower cost per ton output
- Higher resale value arising out of after sales support by authorized distributor using genuine Komatsu parts and lubricants*



Type of Warranty	Standard Warranty	Extended Power Train Warranty*
Warranty period (from date of commissioning)	1 year or 3,000 hours*	4 years or 10,000 hours*
Warranty coverage	Machine	Engine, hydraulic pump, control valve, Swing machinery, swing motor, final drive & track motor*

^{*} Terms & Conditions Apply. Please check with your local distributor's office for more details

Suraksha 10000 offers value added programs:

- 1. Komatsu Undercarriage Inspection
- 2. Energy Saving Training & Guidance
- KOMTRAX™ Machine Health Reports With this
 Machine Care Program, you will have a distinctive
 advantage in maintenance expenses. Significant
 savings on diesel consumed every hour further
 reduces operating cost, thanks to saving training
 and guidance.



Checks



PRODUCT SUPPORT





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, L&T CMB (Komatsu Distributor) provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

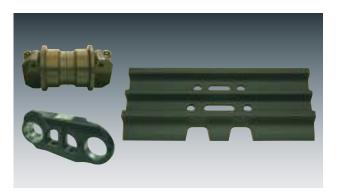
Fleet recommendation

L&T CMB will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.

Technical support

L&T CMB offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection



Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by L&T CMB's strong nationwide network of dealerships, parts outlets and service centres.

Parts availability

L&T CMB with its central warehouse at Nagpur and nationwide network of dealership ensure ready availability and highest first pick rate of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Repair & maintenance service

L&T CMB offers periodical maintenance and quality repair service to the customers, utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.



SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Model		
Aspiration		
Number of cylinders Bore	Type W	later-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injection
Bore	Aspiration	Turbocharged, aftercooled
Bore	Number of cylinders	
Piston displacement		
Piston displacement	Stroke	124 mm
Horsepower: SAE J1995		
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349	•	
Rated rpm	SAE J1995	Gross 123 kW 165 HF
Fan drive method for radiator cooling Mechanical with viscous fan clutce Governor All-speed control, electronic Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 117.2 kW 157.2 HP.	ISO 9249 / SAE J1349	Net 123 kW 165 HP
viscous fan clutc Governor All-speed control, electronic Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 117.2 kW 157.2 HP.	Rated rpm	
Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 117.2 kW 157.2 HP.	Fan drive method for radiato	or cooling Mechanical with viscous fan clutch
117.2 kW 157.2 HP.	Governor	All-speed control, electronic
	117.2 kW 157.2 HP.	·



HYDRAULICS
Type HydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical Intelligence New Design) system, closed-center system with load sensing valves and pressure compensated valves
Number of selectable working modes 6 Main pump:
Type
Supply for control circuit
Travel 2 x axial piston motor with parking brake Swing 1 x axial piston motor with swing holding brake
Relief valve setting:
Implement circuits
Swing circuit
Hydraulic cylinders:
(Number of cylinders – bore x stroke x rod diameter)
Boom
Arm



SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostatic
Swing reduction	Planetary gear
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Holding brake/Swing lock	. Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	12.4 min ⁻¹



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame	ne
Track frame	n
Seal of track Sealed track	ж
Track adjuster	ic
Number of shoes (Each side):4	19
Number of carrier rollers 2 each sic	lе
Number of track rollers (Each side):	9



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILLING)

Fuel tank	J
Coolant	3
Engine	1
Final drive (Each side)	3
Swing drive	3
Hydraulic tank 135	5



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostatic
Maximum drawbar pull	178 kN 18200 kg
Gradeability	70%, 35°
Maximum travel speed:	High 5.5 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Mid 4.1 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Low
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Parking brake	Mechanical disc brake



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 8.6 m mono boom, 6.4 m arm, 0.5 m³ PC210LC-10M0 Super Front backhoe bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

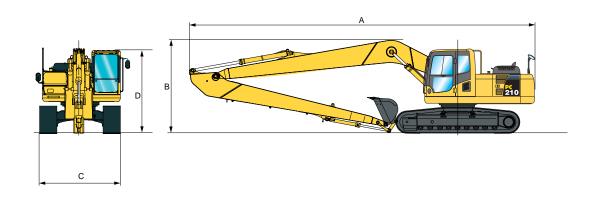
Shoes	PC210LC-10M0		
Silves	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure	
600 mm 24500 kg		0.52 kg/cm ²	
800 mm 25100 kg		0.40 kg/cm ²	

Bucket Capacity (heaped)	Width		Weight	Number of Tooth	Arm Length
SAE, PCSA	Width Side Cutters	Width Side Cutters	Width Side Cutters	Nmber of Teeth	6.4 m
0.50 m ³	835 mm	935 mm	450 kg	4	0

These figures are based on operating conditions with maximum bucket load, maximum reach and ensured lateral stability.

O: Material weight not over 1.8 t/ m³

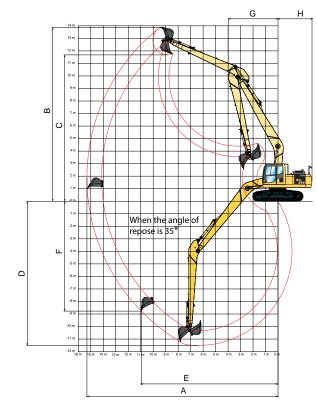




PC210LC-10M0 Super Long Front		
Α	Overall length	12,540mm
В	Overall height (To top of boom)	3,090 mm
C	Overall width	2,980 mm
D	Cab high	3,045 mm
	Track shoe width	600 mm
	Distance, swing to rear end	2,910 mm



WORKING RANGE



PC210LC-10M0 Super Long Front		
	Boom	8.6 m
	Arm	6.4 m
	Bucket	0.50 m ³
Α	Max. digging reach	15,160 mm
В	Max. digging height	13,380 mm
C	Max. dumping height	11,055 mm
D	Max. digging depth	11,620 mm
Ε	Digging reach at 35° repose angle	12,120 mm
F	Digging depth at 35° repose angle	7,210 mm
G	Min. swing radius	4,040 mm
Н	Tail swing radius	3,050 mm
	Bucket Radius	1,267 mm
	Max. digging reach at ground level	15,030 mm

19



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

ENGINE

- Air pre-cleaner
- Automatic engine warm-up system
- Coolant filter
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D107E-1
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Fan clutch
- Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net
- Large capacity fuel pre-filter

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Alternator, 24 V/60 A. brushless
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/88 Ah
- Battery disconnect switch with operation lamp
- Starting motor, 24 V/4.5 kW
- Working light, 2 (Boom and R.H.)

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Boom holding valve
- Clogging sensor for hydraulic return
- Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system
- Working mode selection system

GUARDS AND COVERS

• Fan guard structure

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Track guiding guard, center section
- Track roller 9 each side
- Track shoen 600 mm triple grouser

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- 12 V power supply
- Auto A/C with defroster
- AUX equipped with radio
- Equipment Management Monitoring System
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Rear view mirrors (R.H., L.H., rear, sidewise)
- Suspension seat

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

Oil sampling port (Engine & hydraulic)

OTHER EQUIPMENT

- Blow-by sensor
- Heavy Counterweight
- Electric horn KOMTRAX
- Rear reflector

Power maximizing system

- Service Valve

• Slip-resistant plates

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Amber beacon lamp on cab roof
- Working lights −2 on cab
- −1 on counterweight

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Clogging sensor for breaker return filter
- Inline filter
- Attachment Piping kit

GUARDS AND COVERS

• Heavy duty revolving frame undercover

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Track frame undercover
- Track roller guards (Full length)
- Triple Grouser Shoes
- -800mm track

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- Bolt-on top guard
- Cab accessories
- -Rain visor
- -Sun visor Cab front guard
- -Full height guard
- Top guard level 2
- Front guard level 2

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

• Preventive Maintenance (PM) service connector

For lead time, please consult your distributor.

 $M \in M O$



ENGINE:

- Automatic engine warm-up system
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D114E-3
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net
- Suction fan
- Large capacity fuel pre-filter
- Precleaner

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM:

- Alternator, 24 V/60 A
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/126 Ah
- Starting motor, 24 V/7.5 kW
- Working light, boom X 1 and right console

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:

- Boom holding valve
- Power maximizing system
- Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system
- Two-mode settings for boom
- Working mode selection system

GUARDS AND COVERS:

- Fan guard structure
- Track guiding guard, center section (each side)

UNDERCARRIAGE:

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Track roller, 8 each side
- Track shoe, 600 mm triple grouser

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT:

- A/C with defroster
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Rear view mirrors (RH, LH, rear, sidewise)
- Seat belt, retractable
- Seat suspension

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- -2200 mm arm, heavy duty
- Boom
- -6470 mm boom, heavy duty

OTHER EQUIPMENT:

- Large capacity Counterweight
- Electric horn
- Rear reflector
- Slip-resistant plates
- Fuel refill pump

* OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:

- Service valve
- Rock breaker attachment piping kit

DGMS EQUIPMENT:

- Rear view camera
- Battery disconnect switch
- Audio visual Alarm
- Automatic fire supression system

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT:

- Cabin accessories

 —Fan
- Manual fire extinguisher
- Bolt-on top guard
- Cab front guard Full height guard

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- Boom
- -6000 mm boom, heavy duty

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM:

• Working lights (2 on cab)

ATTACHMENT:

- Hydraulic breaker
- Hydraulic quick coupler

www.komatsuindia.in

KOMATSU®

Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. **KOMATSU**° is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

Printed in India 201804

KOMATSU®

PC300LC-8M0

PC 300LC

Gross: 194 kW 260 HP / 1950 min⁻¹
Net: 187 kW 250 HP / 1950 min⁻¹

OPERATING WEIGHT

33740 – 34100 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY



WALK-AROUND



PRODUCTIVITY, ECOLOGY & ECONOMY

High Production and Low Fuel Consumption by Total Control of the Engine, Hydraulic and Electronic System

Low Emission Engine and Low Operation Noise

Large Drawbar Pull and Digging Force

Two-mode Setting for Boom

COMFORT & SAFETY

Large Comfortable Cabin

Factory Fitted DGMS items (Optional)

ICT *& KOMTRAX

Large High Resolution Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Monitor

Equipment Management Monitoring System

KOMTRAX

* Information and Communication Technology

MAINTENANCE & RELIABILITY

Easy Maintenance

High Rigidity Work Equipment

ecology & economy - technology 3

PC300LC-8M0

HORSEPOWER		194 kW 260 HP / 1950 min ⁻¹ 187 kW 250 HP / 1950 min ⁻¹
OPERATING WEIGHT		33740 – 33400 kg
BUCKET CAPACITY		1.4 – 2.3 m ³

Photos may include optional equipment.

PRODUCTIVITY, ECOLOGY & ECONOMY

Low Fuel Consumption

The newly-developed Komatsu SAA6D114E-3 engine enables NOx emissions to be significantly reduced with the accurate multi-stage fuel injection by the engine controller. It improves total engine durability using high-pressure fuel injection system developed specifically for construction machinery. This excavator significantly reduces hourly fuel consumption using the highly-efficient matching techniques of engine and hydraulic unit and also provides features that promote energy-saving operations such as the E mode and ECO gauge.

Fuel consumption

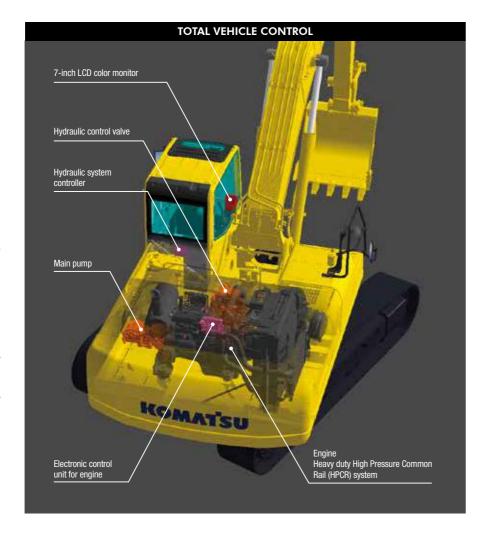


Vs. PC300LC-7
Based on typical work pattern collected via KOMTRAX.
Fuel consumption varies depending on job conditions.

Komatsu Technology

Komatsu develops and produces all major components, such as engines, electronics and hydraulic components, in house. With this "Komatsu Technology" and adding customer feedback, Komatsu is achieving great advancements in technology. To achieve both high levels of productivity and economical performance, Komatsu has developed the main components with a total control system. The result is a new generation of high performance and environment-friendly excavators.





Low Emission Engine

Komatsu SAA6D114E-3 reduces NOx emission by 33% compared with the PC300LC-7. This engine is U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emission equivalent.



Low Operation Noise

Enables low noise operation using the low-noise engine and methods to cut noise at source.

Idling Caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.



ECO Gauge that Assists Energy-saving Operations

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a

glance on the right of the multi-function color monitor for environmentfriendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO₂ emissions and efficient fuel consumption.



ECO gauge

Working Modes Selection

The PC300LC-8M0 excavator is equipped with six working modes (P, E, L, B, ATT/P and ATT/E mode) Each mode is designed to



match engine speed and pump output to the application. This provides the flexibility to match equipment performance to the job at hand.

Working Mode	Application	Advantage
P	Power mode	Maximum production/power Fast cycle time
E	Economy mode	Good cycle timeBetter fuel economy
L	Lifting mode	 Suitable attachment speed Lifting capacity is increased 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.
В	Breaker mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow
ATT/P	Attachment Power mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2 wayPower mode
ATT/E	Attachment Economy mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2 way Economy mode

Maximum Drawbar Pull

Maximum drawbar pull provides superb steering and slope climbing performance.

Maximum drawbar pull: **264 kN** (26900 kgf)



High Digging Force

One-touch power max. switch when kept pressed, temporarily increases digging force for 8.5 seconds of operation.

Maximum arm crowd force (ISO 6015): 235 kN (24 t)

(With Power Max.)

Maximum bucket digging force (ISO 6015): 259 kN (26.4 t)

(With Power Max.)

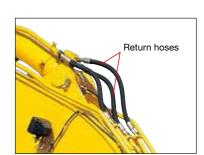
Measured with Power Max. function, 2200 mm arm and ISO 6015 rating.

One-touch power max. switch



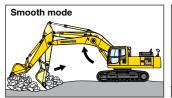
Smooth Loading Operation

Two return hoses improve hydraulic performance. In the arm out function, a portion of the oil is returned directly to the tank providing smooth operation.

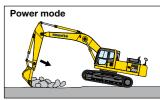


Two-mode Setting for Boom

Smooth mode provides easy operation for gathering blasted rock or scraping down operation. When maximum digging force is needed, switch to Power mode for more effective excavating.



Boom floats upward, reducing lifting of machine front. This facilitates gathering blasted rock and scraping down operations.



Boom pushing force is increased, ditch digging and box digging operation on hard ground are improved.

SAFETY

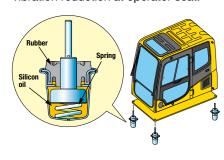


Low Cab Noise

The cab is highly rigid and has excellent sound absorption ability. Thorough improvement of noise source reduction and use of low noise engine, hydraulic equipment, and air conditioner allows this machine to generate a low level of noise.

Low Vibration with Cab Damper Mounting

PC300LC-8M0 uses viscous damper mounting for cab that incorporates longer stroke and the addition of a spring. The cab damper mounting combined with high rigidity deck aids vibration reduction at operator seat.



Wide Cab

Wide spacious cab includes seat with reclining backrest. The seat height and longitudinal inclination are easily adjusted using a pull-up lever. You can set the appropriate operational posture of armrest together with the console. Reclining the seat further enables you to place it into the fully flat state with the headrest attached.



Pressurized Cab*

Standard air conditioner (A/C), air filter and higher internal air pressure prevent external dust from entering the cab.

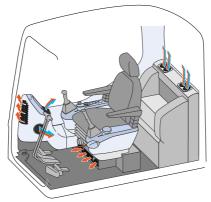
*Non-A/C cabin optional

Automatic Air Conditioner (A/C)

Enables you to easily and precisely set cab atmosphere with the instru-



ments on the large LCD. The bi-level control function keeps the operator's head and feet cool and warm respectively. This improved air flow function keeps the inside of the cab comfortable throughout the year. Defroster function keeps front glass clear.



Slip-resistant Plates

Highly durable slip-resistant plates maintain superior traction performance for the long term.



Pump/Engine Room Partition

Pump/engine room partition prevents oil from spraying onto the engine if a hydraulic hose bursts.

Lock Lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement. Neutral start function allows machine to be started only in lock position.



Large Side-view, Rear and Sidewise Mirrors

Large right-side mirror and additional rear & right side mirrors allow the PC300LC-8M0 to meet the visibility requirements. (ISO 5006: 2006)



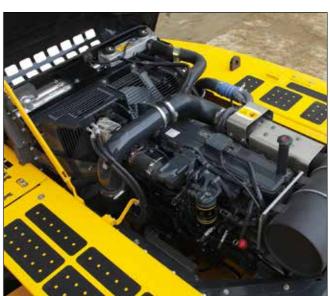




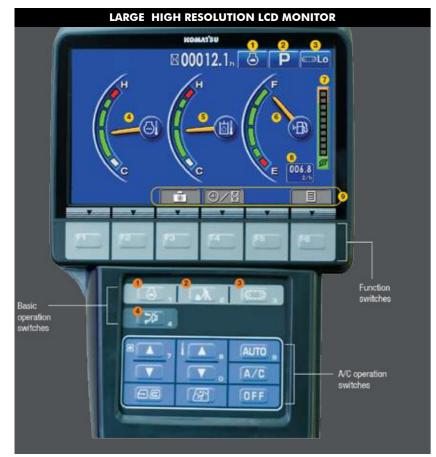


Thermal and Fan Guards

Thermal and fan guards are placed around high-temperature parts of the engine and fan drive.

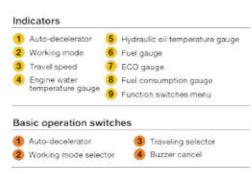


ICT & KOMTRAX



Large LCD Monitor

A large user-friendly high resolution LCD color monitor enables safe, accurate and smooth work. Visibility and resolution are further improved in 7-inch large LCD. Simple and easy to operate switches. Function keys facilitate multi-function operations. Displays data in various languages to globally support operators around the world.



Supports Efficiency Improvement

Main screen display advices for promoting energy-saving operations. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs, etc.





ECO guidance

ECO guidance menu



Equipment Management Monitoring System

Monitor function

Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.



Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.



Trouble data memory function

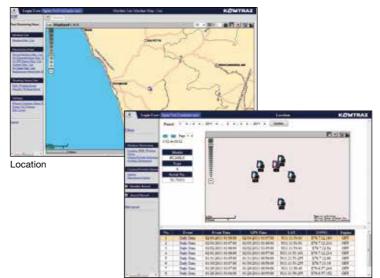
Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.

KØMTRAX

assists customer's equipment management and contributes to Fuel Cost Saving

Equipment Management Support

KOMTRAX terminal installed on your machine collects and sends information such as machine location, working record, machine conditions, etc. using wireless communication. You can review the KOMTRAX data remotely via the online application. KOMTRAX not only gives you information on your machine, but the convenience of managing your fleet on the web.



Movement generated position



Monthly status summary

Energy-saving Operation Report

KOMTRAX can provide various useful information which includes the energy-saving operation report created based on the operating information of your machine such as fuel consumption and idle time.



lma

 $_{
m S}$

MAINTENANCE

Side-by-side Cooling

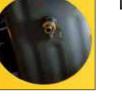
Since radiator and oil cooler are arranged in parallel, it is easy to clean, remove and install them.



Equipped with Drain Valve as Standard

Prevents clothes and the ground from becoming

contaminated due to oil spillage and facilitates easy draining of engine oil during scheduled maintenance.



High-capacity Air Cleaner

High capacity air cleaner is comparable to that of larger machines. The larger air cleaner can extend air cleaner life during long-term operation and

prevents early clogging and resultant power decrease. Reliability is improved by a new seal design.



Filter and Fuel Drain Valve Engine oil level gauge, and fuel filter are

Easy Access to Engine Oil

one side mounted to improve accessibility. Engine oil filter and fuel drain valve are remotely mounted to improve accessibility.









Fuel drain valve

Removes water and contaminants in the fuel to ensure clean fuel flow to engine.

Pre-filter (With Water Separator)

Equipped with the Fuel







Large Fuel Tank Capacity

Large capacity, rust prevention treated fuel tank extends operating hours before refueling.

KOMATSU

High-Rigid Work Equipment

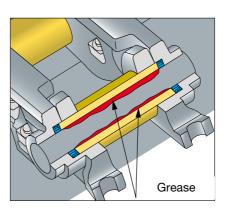
RELIABILITY

Boom and arms are constructed of thick plates of high tensile strength steel. In addition, these structures are designed with large cross-sectional areas and generous use of castings. The result is working attachments that exhibit long term durability and high resistance to bending and torsional stress.



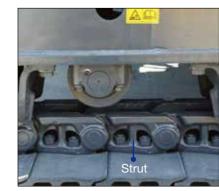
Grease Sealed Track

PC300LC-8M0 uses grease sealed tracks for extended undercarriage life.



Track Link with Strut

PC300LC-8M0 uses track links with strut, providing superb durability.



The revolving frame, center frame and undercarriage are designed by using the most advanced three-dimensional CAD and Finite Element Method (FEM) analysis technology.

Highly Reliable Electronic Devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

- Controller Sensors
- Connectors Heat resistant wiring

Reliable Components

All major machine components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu ensuring reliable performance over long period of time.

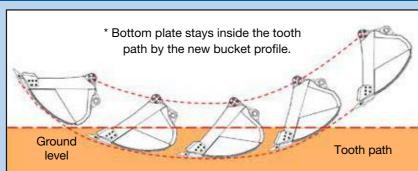
KOMATSU BUCKET

Feature of [ME Bucket] (More suitable shape and Effectiveness Bucket)

High Productivity by Low-resistant Excavation



The new Ideal bucket profile produces lower resistance inside & outside bucket and production will be substantially increased.



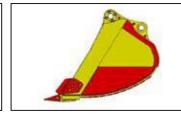
KOMATSU "ME" Bucket with Larger Width

- "ME" more efficient bucket options made available with additional wear plates and long service life
- Low resistant excavation High durability

High productivity

- High fuel efficiency





Conventional

"ME" Bucket

■ Category and Feature

Category	Load / Wear / Soil (Application)	Image
Standard	Load Machine power is mostly medium, but occasionally high. Bucket movements are smooth with minor shock load. Bucket penetrates easily. Wear Material is lightly abrasive. Some sand may be medium abrasive. Soil Mostly loose sand, gravel and finely broken materials.	
More Efficient "ME"	Load High productivity by low-resistant excavation. Medium, but continuos load. Wear Material is not abrasive. Soil Loose soil, sand & clay	
Heavy Duty HD	Load Machine power is high during majority of the work. Medium, but continuous shock load. Wear Material is abrasive. Light scratch marks can be seen at the bucket. Soil Limestone, shot rock, compact mix of sand, gravel and clay.	

■ Bucket Line-up

Category	Working C	Bucket Capacity (Heaped) (Cu.m	Width (mm)		Weight (kg)	Tooth	PC300LC-8M0 Boom+Arm(m)	
Category	Contaition	SAE	Without side cutters	with side cutters	with side cutters	Quantity	6.5+2.2	6+2.2
	Soft gravel &	1.60	1522	1640	1580	6	0	х
Standard	Standard General construction	2.10	1565	1685	1725	5		
	Iron Ore	1.60	1522	1640	1580	6	•	•
More		1.90	1516	1616	1745	5	0	0
Efficient	Irrigation & Soft soil work	2.10	1493	1593	1990	5		
(ME)		2.30	1603	1703	2095	5	х	
Heavy duty (HD)	Blue metal Quarry, Limestone	1.40	1370	1474	1520	5	0	х

^{• :} Material upto 2.4 ton/m3 : Material upto 1.8 ton/m3 : Material upto 1.5 ton/m3 ×: Not usable

SE SPEC.

PC300LC-8M0 SE spec. is equipped with a large reinforced ME bucket to increase the efficiency of loading a tipper with large amount of loose materials.



Photos may include optional equipment.

13

KOMATSU TOTAL SUPPORT

Komatsu Genuine Attachment Tool

A wide range of Komatsu-genuine attachment tools for hydraulic excavators are provided to suit customers' specific applications.

Hydraulic breaker

The hydraulic breaker is an attachment tool used for breaking rock beds and paved surfaces, demolishing concrete structures, etc. The large gas chamber, ideal gas ratio and long-stroke piston deliver a powerful impact force. Since the breaker unit does not require an accumulator, the number of parts has been reduced, resulting in lower maintenance costs.

Komatsu breaker delivers high impact force with every blow thus, ideal choice for primary & secondary breaking.

Model typ	JTHB350-3	
Working weight	kg	2790
Oil flow	l/min	180 - 230
Operating pressure	MPa	13 - 18
Impact rate	bpm	350 - 450
Chisel diameter	mm	ø 146



- · Accumulator FREE design
- High Impact Energy
- High Reliability & Durability
- · Low Operating Cost

Hydraulic Quick Coupler

Hydraulic Quick Coupler is used to facilitate frequent changes between attachments such as bucket, breaker etc., thus, saves time and reduces operator fatigue. The Twin Lock series Hydraulic Quick Coupler is completely automatic and with Automatic Blocking System makes the operation easy and safe.

- Fully Automatic (Hydraulic coupling)
- Twin Lock Mechanism
- Automatic Blocking System (ABS)
- Blocking Bar
- Lifting Eye
- · Casting Manufacturing









Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, Komatsu Distributor provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

Komatsu Distributor will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.

Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by Larsen & Toubro's strong nationwide network, parts outlets and service centers.

Parts availability

Komatsu Distributor is available for regular and emergency requirements of the customers for supply of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Technical support

Komatsu Distributor offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection



Repair & maintenance service

Komatsu Distributor offers quality repair service and periodical maintenance to the customers, while utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.

SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Model	Komatsu SAA6D114E-3
Type	Water-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injection
Aspiration	Turbocharged, aftercooled
Number of cylinders	6
Bore	114 mm
Stroke	
Piston displacement	8.27 L
Horsepower:	
SAE J1995	Gross 194 kW 260 HP
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349	Net 187 kW 250 HP
Rated rpm	1950 min ⁻¹
Fan drive method for radiator	cooling Mechanical
Governor	All-speed control, electronic

U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions equivalent.



HYDRAULICS

Type	Two variable of	displacement piston type
Pumps for	Boom, arm, bucket, s	swing, and travel circuits
Maximum flow		535 L/min
Supply for cont	rol circuit	Self-reducing valve
Hydraulic motors	::	
Travel	2 x axial piston r	motor with parking brake

Hydraulic cylinders:

(Number of cylinders – bore x stroke x rod diameter)

Boom	. 2–140 mm x 1480 mm x 100 mm
Arm	. 1–160 mm x 1825 mm x 110 mm
Bucket for 2.22 m arm	. 1–150 mm x 1285 mm x 110 mm



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostatic
Maximum drawbar pull	264 kN 26900 kg
Gradeability	70%, 35°
Maximum travel speed	: High
(Auto-shift)	Mid
(Auto-shift)	Low
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Parking brake	Mechanical disc brake



SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostatic
Swing reduction	Planetary gear
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Holding brake/Swing lock	Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame X-fram	е
Track frame	n
Seal of trackSealed trac	k
Track adjuster	С
Number of shoes (Each side):4	8
Number of carrier rollers 2 each sid	е
Number of track rollers (Each side):	8



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILLING)

Fuel tank	05 L
Coolant	31 L
Engine	37 L
Final drive (Each side)	. 9 L
Swing drive	16 L
Hydraulic tank	88 L



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 6470 mm one-piece boom, 2200 mm arm, SAE J 296 heaped 2.10 m³ GP bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

	PC300LC-8M0					
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure				
600 mm	33740 kg	63.8 kPa 0.65 kg/cm²				

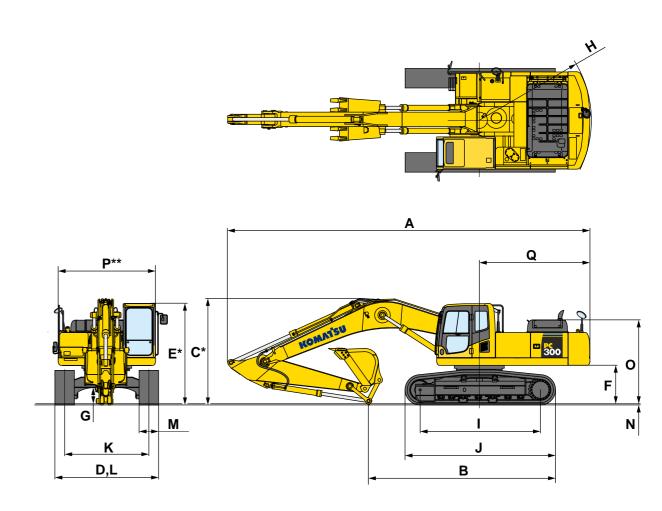
Operating weight including 6000 mm one-piece boom, 2200 mm arm, SAE J 296 heaped 2.30 m³ bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

	PC300LC-8	MO SE Spec.
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure
600 mm	34100 kg	63.9 kPa 0.65 kg/cm ²



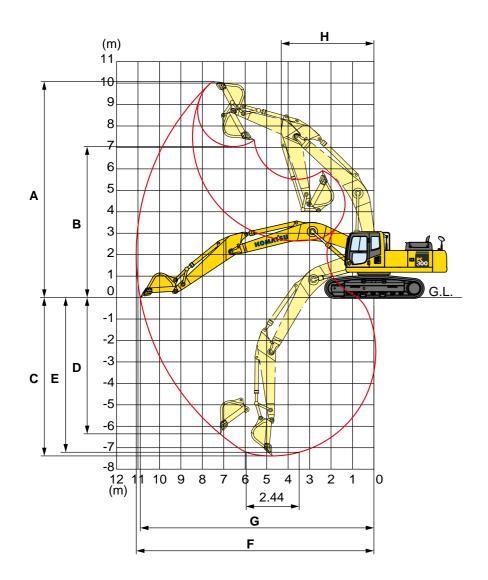
DIMENSIONS

Mod	el	PC300LC -8M0	PC300LC-8M0 SE SPEC.				
Boor	n Length	6470 mm	6000 mm				
Arm	Length	2200 mm	2200 mm				
Buck	ket Capacity	2.1 m3	2.3 m3				
Α	Overall length	11405 mm	10940 mm				
В	Length on ground (Transport)	6980 mm	4485 mm				
C	Overall height (To top of boom)*	3480 mm	3710 mm				
Mod	el						
D	Overall width	3190 mm	3190 mm				
E	Overall height (To top of cab)*	3135 mm					
F	Ground clearance, counterweight	1185 mm					
G	Ground clearance (Minimum)	500 mm					
Н	Tail swing radius	3550 mm					
I	Track length on ground	4030 mm					
J	Track length	4955 mm					
K	Track gauge	2590 mm					
L	Width of crawler	3190 mm					
М	Shoe width	600 mm					
N	Grouser height	36 mm					
0	Machine cab height	2585 mm					
P	Machine cab width	3165 mm					
Q	Distance, swing center to rear end	3510 mm					

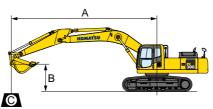


WORKING RANGE

Model		PC300LC-8M0	PC300LC-8M0 SE SPEC				
Boom Le	ength	6470 mm					
Arm Len	ngth	2220 mm	2200 mm				
A M	Max. digging height	9295 mm	9000 mm				
в м	Max. dumping height	6365 mm	6055 mm				
C M	Max. digging depth	6540 mm	6100 mm				
D M	Max. vertical wall digging depth	2870 mm	2000 mm				
E M	Max. digging depth of cut for 2440 mm level	6085 mm	5630 mm				
F M	Max. digging reach	10245 mm	9775 mm				
G M	Max. digging reach at ground level	10045 mm	9540 mm				
H M	fin. swing radius	4470 mm	4085 mm				
_		228 kN	223 kN				
Rating BI	Bucket digging force at power max.	23300 kgf	22800 kgf				
9 8		51370 lb	50510 lb				
SAE 1179		225 kN	215 kN				
A A	rm crowd force at power max.	22900 kgf	21900 kgf				
S		50490 lb	48350 lb				
_		259 kN	246 kN				
Bucket	lucket digging force at power max.	26400 kgf	25100 kgf				
S Ra		58200 lb	55300 lb				
SO 6015		235 kN	224 kN				
S A	rm crowd force at power max.	24000 kgf	22822 kgf				
-		52910 lb	50360 lb				



LIFTING CAPACITY WITH LIFTING MODE



PC300LC-8M0

- A: Reach from swing center
- B: Bucket hook height
- C: Lifting capacity

- Cf: Rating over front
 Cs: Rating over side

 ⊕: Rating at maximum reach

PC300LC-8M0 Boom: 6470 mm Arm: 2200 mm Bucket: 2.1 CUM														
A MAX REACH		9.0m (29') 7.5 m (24')			6.0 m (19') 4.5 m		4.5 m (14') 3.0 n		n (9') 1.5 m (4.5')					
В	RADIUS	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
	6.63 m (21.7')	*7900 (17400)	7300 (16100)											
6.0 m (19')	7.64 m (25.1')	*7600 (16700)	5450 (12000)			*7500 (16600)	5700 (12500)	* 8450 (18600)	* 8450 (18600)					
4.5 m (14')	8.27 m (27.1')	*7500 (16600)	4550 (10000)			*7900 (17400)	5450 (12100)	*9700 (21400)	8250 (18100)	*12700 (28000)	*12700 (28000)			
3.0 m (9')	8.58 m (28.1')	6950 (15300)	4050 (9000)			*8500 (18700)	5200 (11400)	*10900 (24100)	7700 (17000)					
1.5 m (4')	8.62 m (28.3')	6750 (14800)	3900 (8600)			8550 (18800)	5000 (11100)	*11750 (26000)	7250 (16000)					
0.0 m (0')	8.39 m (27.5')	6950 (15300)	4000 (8800)			8350 (18400)	4850 (10700)	*11950 (26400)	6950 (15400)					
–1.5 m (-4')	7.87 m (25.8')	7650 (16900)	4450 (9800)			8300 (18200)	4800 (10600)	*11450 (25300)	6900 (15200)	*14950 (33000)	11100 (24500)			
-3.0 m (-9')	6.99 m (22.9')	* 7900 (17500)	5450 (12100)					*10000 (22100)	7000 (15400)	*12900 (28500)	11300 (24900)	*14300 (31600)	*14300 (31600)	
–4.5 m (-14')	5.58 m (18.3')	* 7150 (5800)	*7150 (15800)					*5800 (12800)	*5800 (12800)	*9400 (20800)	*9400 (20800)			
-6.0 m (-19')														

*LOAD IS LIMITED BY HYDRAULIC CAPACITY RATHER THAN TIPPING. RATINGS ARE BASED ON SAE STANDARD No. J1097 RATED LOADS DO NOT EXCEED 87% OF HYDRAULIC LIFT CAPACITY 75% OF TIPPING LOAD.

PC300LC	-8M0 SE SPEC	Boor	m: 6000 mm	Arm: 220	0 mm	Bucket: 2.3	CUM	-						
A	A MAX REACH		9.0m (29') 7.5 m (24')		6.0 m (19')		4.5 n	4.5 m (14')		3.0 m (9')				
В	RADIUS	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
7.5 m (24')	5.96 m (19.5')	*8500 (18900)	*8500 (18900)					*8200 (18000)	*8200 (18000)					
6.0 m (19')	7.07 m (23.2')	*8100 (17900)	6150 (13600)					* 8550 (18900)	* 8500 (18700)					
4.5 m (14')	7.74 m (25.4')	*8000 (17700)	5000 (11000)			*8050 (17700)	5300 (11700)	*9550 (21000)	8050 (17700)	*12650 (27900)	*12650 (27900)			
3.0 m (9')	8.08 m (26.5')	7600 (16800)	4450 (9800)			*8550 (18800)	5050 (11200)	*10800 (23900)	7650 (16800)	*14900 (32900)	12350 (27200)			
1.5 m (4')	8.12 m (26.6')	7350 (16200)	4250 (9400)			8350 (18500)	4850 (10700)	*11700 (25800)	7200 (15900)	*16650 (36700)	11450 (25300)			
0.0 m (0')	7.88 m (25.8')	7650 (16900)	4000 (9700)			8300 (18300)	4800 (10500)	*11900 (26300)	6950 (15400)	*16650 (36700)	11150 (24600)			
–1.5 m (-4')	7.32 m (24.0')	*8500 (18700)	4950 (11000)			8050 (17800)	4750 (10400)	*11300 (24900)	6900 (15200)	*15200 (33500)	11200 (24700)			
-3.0 m (-9')	6.36 m (20.9')	* 8350 (18400)	6400 (14100)					*9400 (20700)	7050 (15500)	*12700 (28000)	11400 (25200)	*15250 (33600)	*15250 (33600)	
-4.5 m (-14')	4.76 m (15.6')	* 6950 (15300)	* 6950 (15300							*8100 (17800)	*8100 (17800)			
-6.0 m (-19')														

*LOAD IS LIMITED BY HYDRAULIC CAPACITY RATHER THAN TIPPING. RATINGS ARE BASED ON SAE STANDARD No. J1097 RATED LOADS DO NOT EXCEED 87% OF HYDRAULIC LIFT CAPACITY 75% OF TIPPING LOAD.



ENGINE:

- Automatic engine warm-up system
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D114E-3
- Engine overheat prevention system • Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net
- Suction fan
- Large capacity fuel pre-filter
- Precleaner

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM:

- Alternator, 24 V/60 A
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/126 Ah
- Starting motor, 24 V/7.5 kW
- Working light, 2 (Boom and RH)
- Working light, boom X 1 and right console

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:

- Boom holding valve
- Power maximizing system
- Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system
- Two-mode settings for boom
- Working mode selection system

GUARDS AND COVERS:

- Fan guard structure
- Track guiding guard, center section (2 on each side)

OTHER EQUIPMENT:

Electric horn

 Rear reflector • Slip-resistant plates

Fuel refill pump

• Large capacity Counterweight

UNDERCARRIAGE:

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Double flange Track roller, 8 each side
- Track shoe, 600 mm triple grouser

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT:

- A/C with defroster
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Rear view mirrors (RH, LH, rear, sidewise)
- Seat belt, retractable
- Seat suspension
- Bolt-on top guard
- Cab front guard Full height guard,

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- -2550 mm arm, heavy duty
- Boom
- -6470 mm boom, heavy duty

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:

- Service valve
- Rock breaker attachment piping kit

DGMS EQUIPMENT:

- Rear view camera
- · Battery disconnect switch
- Audio visual Alarm
- · Automatic fire supression system

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT:

- Cabin accessories —Fan
- Manual fire extinguisher

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- Arms
- -2220 mm arm, heavy duty -3185 mm arm, heavy duty
- -6000 mm boom assembly, heavy duty

ATTACHMENT:

- Hydraulic breaker
- Hydraulic quick coupler

Printed in India 201804 www.komatsuindia.in



KOMATSU®

PC350LC-8M0

PC 350LC

Gross: 194 kW 260 HP / 1950 min⁻¹ Net: 187 kW 250 HP / 1950 min⁻¹

OPERATING WEIGHT 34020 - 35200 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY 1.4 - 2.30 m³



WALK-AROUND



PRODUCTIVITY, ECOLOGY & ECONOMY

High Production and Low Fuel Consumption by Total Control of the Engine, Hydraulic and Electronic System

Low Emission Engine and Low Operation Noise

Large Drawbar Pull and Digging Force

Two-mode Setting for Boom

COMFORT & SAFETY

Large Comfortable Cabin

Factory Fitted DGMS items (Optional)

ICT *& KOMTRAX

Large High Resolution Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) Monitor

Equipment Management Monitoring System

KOMTRAX

* Information and Communication Technology

MAINTENANCE & RELIABILITY

Easy Maintenance

High Rigidity Work Equipment

COLOGY & economy-technology 3

PC350LC-8M0

HORSEPOWER		194 kW 260 HP / 1950 min ⁻¹ 187 kW 250 HP / 1950 min ⁻¹
OPERATING WI	EIGHT	34020 – 35200 kg
BUCKET CAPAC	CITY	1.4 – 2.3 m ³

Photos may include optional equipment.

PRODUCTIVITY, ECOLOGY & ECONOMY

Low Fuel Consumption

The newly-developed Komatsu SAA6D114E-3 engine enables NOx emissions to be significantly reduced with the accurate multi-stage fuel injection by the engine controller. It improves total engine durability using high-pressure fuel injection system developed specifically for construction machinery. This excavator significantly reduces hourly fuel consumption using the highly-efficient matching techniques of engine and hydraulic unit and also provides features that promote energy-saving operations such as the E mode and ECO gauge.

Fuel consumption

3% reduced

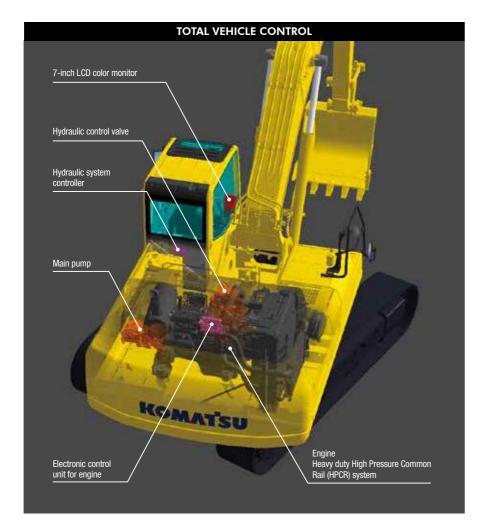
Vs. PC350LC-7

Based on typical work pattern collected via KOMTRAX. Fuel consumption varies depending on job conditions.

Komatsu Technology

Komatsu develops and produces all major components, such as engines, electronics and hydraulic components, in house. With this "Komatsu Technology" and adding customer feedback, Komatsu is achieving great advancements in technology. To achieve both high levels of productivity and economical performance, Komatsu has developed the main components with a total control system. The result is a new generation of high performance and environment-friendly excavators.





Low Emission Engine

Komatsu SAA6D114E-3 reduces NOx emission by 33% compared with the PC350LC-7. This engine is U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emission equivalent.



Low Operation Noise

Enables low noise operation using the low-noise engine and methods to cut noise at source.

Idling Caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.



ECO Gauge that assists Energy-saving Operations

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a

glance on the right of the multi-function color monitor for environmentfriendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO₂ emissions and efficient fuel consumption.



ECO gauge

Working Modes Selection

The PC350LC-8M0 excavator is equipped with six working modes (P, E, L, B, ATT/P and ATT/E mode) Each mode is designed to



match engine speed and pump output to the application. This provides the flexibility to match equipment performance to the job at hand.

Working Mode	Application	Advantage
Р	Power mode	Maximum production/power Fast cycle time
E	Economy mode	Good cycle time Better fuel economy
L	Lifting mode	 Suitable attachment speed Lifting capacity is increased 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.
В	Breaker mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow
ATT/P	Attachment Power mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2 way Power mode
ATT/E	Attachment Economy mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2 way Economy mode

Maximum Drawbar Pull

Maximum drawbar pull provides superb steering and slope climbing performance.

Maximum drawbar pull: **264 kN** (26900 kgf)



High Digging Force

One-touch power max. switch when kept pressed, temporarily increases digging force for 8.5 seconds of operation.

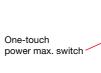
Maximum arm crowd force (ISO 6015):

201 kN (20.5 t) (With Power Max.)

Maximum bucket digging force (ISO 6015):

228 kN (23.2 t) (With Power Max.)

Measured with Power Max. function, 2550 mm arm and ISO 6015 rating.





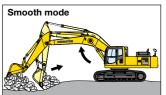
Smooth Loading Operation

Two return hoses improve hydraulic performance. In the arm out function, a portion of the oil is returned directly to the tank providing smooth operation.

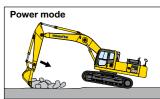


Two-mode Setting for Boom

Smooth mode provides easy operation for gathering blasted rock or scraping down operation. When maximum digging force is needed, switch to Power mode (optional*) for more effective excavating.



Boom floats upward, reducing lifting of machine front. This facilitates gathering blasted rock and scraping down operations.



Boom pushing force is increased, ditch digging and box digging operation on hard ground are improved

*Not applicable for granite and marble application

SAFETY



Low Cab Noise

The cab is highly rigid and has excellent sound absorption ability. Thorough improvement of noise source reduction and use of low noise engine, hydraulic equipment, and air conditioner allows this machine to generate a low level of noise.

Wide Cab

Wide spacious cab includes seat with reclining backrest. The seat height and longitudinal inclination are easily adjusted using a pull-up lever. You can set the appropriate



operational posture of armrest together with the console. Reclining the seat further enables you to place it into the fully flat state with the headrest attached.

Pressurized Cab*

Standard air conditioner (A/C), air filter and higher internal air pressure prevent external dust from entering the cab. *Non-A/C cabin optional

Automatic Air Conditioner (A/C)

Enables you to easily and precisely set cab atmosphere with the instru-



ments on the large LCD. The bi-level control function keeps the operator's head and feet cool and warm respectively. This improved air flow function keeps the inside of the cab comfortable throughout the year. Defroster function keeps front glass clear.



Slip-resistant Plates

Highly durable slip-resistant plates maintain superior traction performance for the long term.



Pump/Engine Room Partition

Pump/engine room partition prevents oil from spraying onto the engine if a hydraulic hose bursts.

Lock Lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement. Neutral start function allows machine to be started only in lock position.



Large Side-view, Rear and Sidewise Mirrors

Large right-side mirror and additional rear & right side mirrors allow the PC350LC-8M0 to meet the visibility requirements. (ISO 5006: 2006)



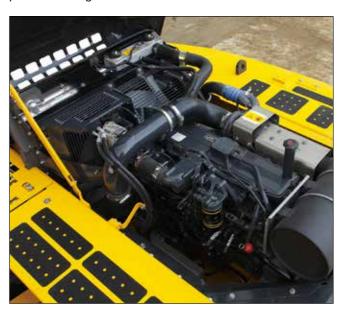




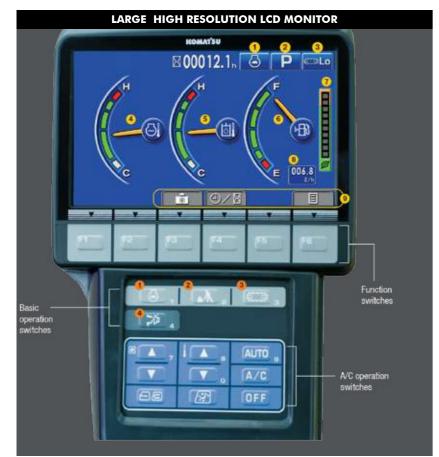


Thermal and Fan Guards

Thermal and fan guards are placed around high-temperature parts of the engine and fan drive.

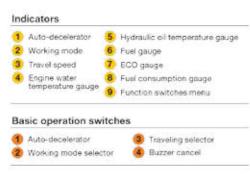


ICT & KOMTRAX



Large LCD Monitor

A large user-friendly high resolution LCD color monitor enables safe, accurate and smooth work. Visibility and resolution are further improved in 7-inch large LCD. Simple and easy to operate switches. Function keys facilitate multi-function operations. Displays data in various languages to support operators around the world.



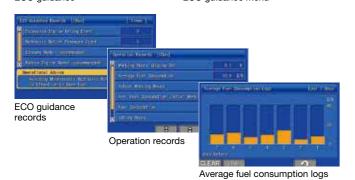
Supports Efficiency Improvement

Main screen display advices for promoting energy-saving operations. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs, etc.





ECO guidance ECO guidance menu



Equipment Management Monitoring System

Monitor function

Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.



Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.



Trouble data memory function

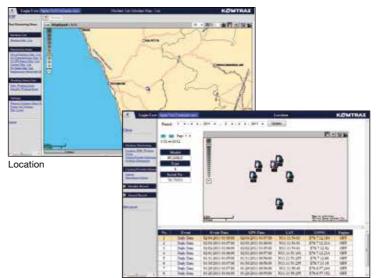
Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.

KOMTRAX

assists customer's equipment management and contributes to Fuel Cost Saving

Equipment Management Support

KOMTRAX terminal installed on your machine collects and sends information such as machine location, working record, machine conditions, etc. using wireless communication. You can review the KOMTRAX data remotely via the online application. KOMTRAX not only gives you information on your machine, but the convenience of managing your fleet on the web.



Movement generated position



Monthly status summary

Energy-saving Operation Report

KOMTRAX can provide various useful information which includes the energy-saving operation report created based on the operating information of your machine such as fuel consumption and idle time.



MAINTENANCE

Side-by-side Cooling

Since radiator and oil cooler are arranged in parallel, it is easy to clean, remove and install them.



Equipped with Drain Valve as standard

Prevents clothes and the ground from

becoming contaminated due to oil spillage and facilitates easy draining of engine oil during scheduled maintenance.



High-capacity Air Cleaner

High capacity air cleaner is comparable to that of larger machines. The larger air cleaner can extend air cleaner life during long-term operation and

prevents early clogging and resultant power decrease. Reliability is improved by a new seal design.



Easy Access to Engine Oil Filter and Fuel Drain Valve

Engine oil level gauge, and fuel filter are one side mounted to improve accessibility. Engine oil filter and fuel drain valve are remotely mounted to improve accessibility.











Equipped with the Fuel Pre-filter (With Water Separator)

Removes water and contaminants in the fuel to ensure clean fuel flow to engine.





RELIABILITY

High Rigid Work Equipment

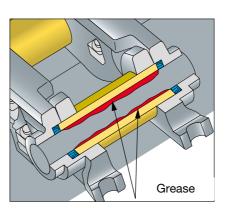
Boom and arms are constructed of thick plates of high tensile strength steel. In addition, these structures are designed with large cross-sectional areas and generous use of castings.

The result is working attachments that exhibit long term durability and high resistance to bending and torsional stress.



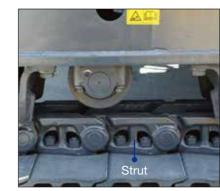
Grease Sealed Track

PC350LC-8M0 uses grease sealed tracks for extended undercarriage life.



Track Link with Strut

PC350LC-8M0 uses track links with strut, providing superb durability.



The revolving frame, center frame and undercarriage are designed by using the most advanced three-dimensional CAD and Finite Element Method (FEM) analysis technology.

Highly Reliable Electronic Devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

- Controller Sensors
- Connectors Heat resistant wiring

Reliable Components

All major machine components, such as engine, hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu ensuring reliable performance over long period of time.

Large Fuel Tank Capacity

Large capacity, rust prevention treated fuel tank extends operating hours before refueling.

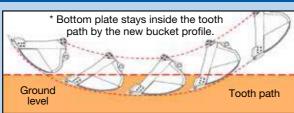
KOMATSU BUCKET

Feature of [ME Bucket] (More suitable shape and Effectiveness Bucket)



High Productivity by Low-resistant Excavation

The new Ideal bucket profile produces lower resistance at inside & outside bucket and production will be greatly increased.



KOMATSU "ME" Bucket with Larger Width

"ME" more efficient bucket options made available with additional wear plates and long service life

- High productivity
- Low resistant excavation High durability
 - High fuel efficiency





Conventional

"ME" Bucket

■ Category and Feature

Category	Load / Wear / Soil (Application)	Image
Standard	Load Machine power is mostly medium, but occasionally high. Bucket movements are smooth with minor shock load. Bucket penetrates easily. Wear Material is lightly abrasive. Some sand may be medium abrasive. Soil Mostly loose sand, gravel and finely broken materials.	
More Efficient "ME"	Load High productivity by low-resistant excavation. Medium, but continuos load. Wear Material is not abrasive. Soil Loose soil, sand & clay	
Heavy Duty HD	Load Machine power is high during majority of the work. Medium, but continuous shock load. Wear Material is abrasive. Light scratch marks can be seen at the bucket. Soil Limestone, shot rock, compact mix of sand, gravel and clay.	
Extra Heavy Duty XHD	Load Machine power is high during most of the work, often at maximum. Dynamic shock loads are frequent and machine may shake. Wear Material is very abrasive. Large scratch marks are visible and, or deform metal. Works within heaps of rock with occasional un-shot rock and rock boulders. Soil Granite, basalt, quartz sand, compact and sticky clay.	

■ Bucket Line-up

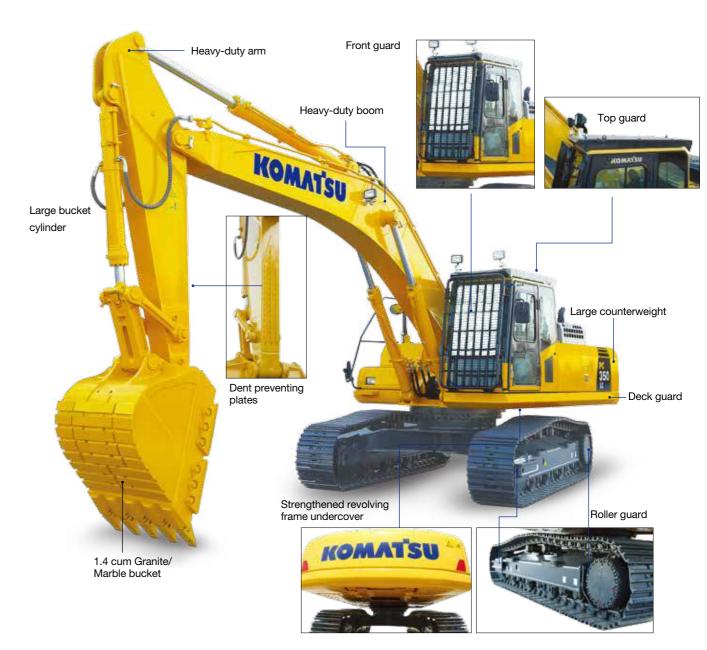
	Working			ı (mm) Weight (kg)		Tooth	PC350LC-8M0 Boom+Arm(m)			
Category	Condition	SAE	Without side cutters	with side cutters	with side cutters	Quantity	6+2.2	6.5+2.2	6.5+2.6	6.5+3.2
	Soft gravel &	1.60	1522	1640	1580	6	Х	0	Х	х
Standard	General construction	2.10	1565	1685	1725	5			Х	Х
	Iron Ore	1.60	1522	1640	1580	6	•	•	Х	х
More		1.90	1516	1616	1745	5	0	0	Х	Х
Efficient	Irrigation & Soft soil work	2.10	1493	1593	1990	5			Х	Х
(ME)	WOLK	2.30	1603	1703	2095	5		х	Х	х
Heavy duty	Blue metal Quarry, Iron ore, Limestone	1.40	1370	1474	1520	5	Х	0	х	х
(HD)	Block Handling	-	1433	-	1597	5	Х	Х	0	0
Extra Heavy duty (XHD)	Granite & Marble Block	1.40	1412	1516	1645	5	Х	х	0	0

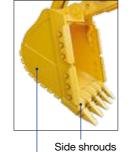
●: Material upto 2.4 ton/m3 ○: Material upto 1.8 ton/m3 □: Material upto 1.5 ton/m3 ×: Not usable

QUARRY HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR

Quarry Hydraulic Excavator - Specifications

Equips PC350LC-8M0 for Granite and Marble segments.





Side reinforcement

plates

plates

Bottom wear

Long life bucket teeth

Overall track link width increase by o/o vs track link width of PC300LC-7





Double-flange track roller Double-flange roller guides track link correctly and extends life of undercarriage.

Number of double-flange track rollers PC350LC-8M0...... 8 each side

Special Purpose Bucket

■ Feature and Specifications

Туре	Machine Spec.	Feature	Width	Image
Block Handling Bucket	Block handling bucket suitable for 6470 mm Boom, 2550 mm and 3185 mm arm.	Easy to handle Granite & Marble Blocks	1450 mm	THE PARTY OF THE P



Photos may include optional equipment.

ATTACHMENT

Komatsu Genuine Attachment Tool

A wide range of Komatsu-genuine attachment tools for hydraulic excavators are provided to suit customers' specific applications.

Hydraulic breaker

The hydraulic breaker is an attachment tool used for breaking rock beds and paved surfaces, demolishing concrete structures, etc. The large gas chamber, ideal gas ratio and long-stroke piston deliver a powerful impact force. Since the breaker unit does not require an accumulator, the number of parts has been reduced, resulting in lower maintenance costs.

Komatsu breaker delivers high impact force with every blow thus, ideal choice for primary & secondary breaking.

Model type			
kg	2790		
I/min	180 - 230		
MPa	13 - 18		
bpm	350 - 450		
mm	ø 146		
	kg I/min MPa bpm		

- Anti-Blank Blow System
- Accumulator FREE design
- High Impact Energy
- High Reliability & Durability
- Low Operating Cost

Hydraulic Quick Coupler

Hydraulic Quick Coupler is used to facilitate frequent changes between attachments such as bucket, breaker etc., thus, saves time and reduces operator fatigue. The Twin Lock series Hydraulic Quick Coupler is completely automatic and with Automatic Blocking System makes the operation easy and safe.

- Fully Automatic (Hydraulic coupling)
- Twin Lock Mechanism
- Automatic Blocking System (ABS)
- Blocking Bar
- Lifting Eye
- Casting Manufacturing







KOMATSU TOTAL SUPPORT





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, Komatsu Distributor provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

Komatsu Distributor will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.



Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by Larsen & Toubro's strong nationwide network, parts outlets and service centers.

Parts availability

Komatsu Distributor is available for regular and emergency requirements of the customers for supply of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Technical support

Komatsu Distributor offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection



Repair & maintenance service

Komatsu Distributor offers quality repair service and periodical maintenance to the customers, while utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.

SPECIFICATIONS



Model
Number of cylinders
Bore114 mm
Stroke
Piston displacement
Horsepower:
SAE J1995
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349 Net 187 kW 250 HP
Rated rpm
Fan drive method for radiator cooling Mechanical
Governor All-speed control, electronic

U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions equivalent.



HYDRAULICS

Type. . HydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical Intelligence New Design) system, closed-center system with load sensing valves and pressure compensated valves

Bucket for 3.19 m and

2.55 m arm 1-140 mm x 1285 mm x 100 mm for 2.22 m arm. 1–150 mm x 1285 mm x 110 mm



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control							
Drive method		 	 	 		Hydros	tatic
Maximum drawbar pull		 	 	 	.264 k	N 2690	0 kg
Gradeability		 	 	 		70%,	35°
Maximum travel speed:	High	 	 	 		5.5 k	m/h
(Auto-shift)	Mid .	 	 	 		4.5 k	m/h
(Auto-shift)	Low.	 	 	 		3.2 k	m/h
Service brake		 	 	 	Hy	draulic	lock
Parking brake		 	 	 Med	hanica	l disc b	rake
-							



SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostatic
Swing reduction	Planetary gear
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Holding brake/Swing lock	Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	9.5 min ⁻¹



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame	X-frame
Track frame	Box-section
Seal of track	Sealed track
Track adjuster	Hydraulic
Number of shoes (Each side):	
Number of carrier rollers	2 each side
Number of track rollers (Each side):	



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY

Fuel tank	05 L
Coolant	31 L
Engine	37 L
Final drive (Each side)	. 9 L
Swing drive	16 L
Hydraulic tank	88 L



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including 6470 mm one-piece boom, 2550 mm arm, SAE J 296 heaped 1.40 m³ bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

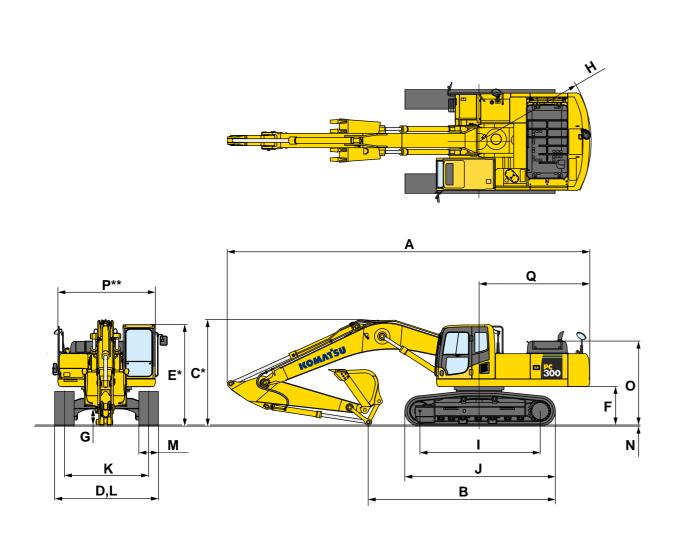
	PC350LC-8M0			
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure		
600 mm	34350 kg	63.9 kPa 0.65 kg/cm ²		

Operating weight including 6000 mm one-piece boom, 2200 mm arm, SAE J 296 heaped 2.3 m³ bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

	PC350LC-8M0 SE Spec.			
Shoes	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure		
600 mm	34650 kg	65.7 kPa 0.67 kg/cm ²		

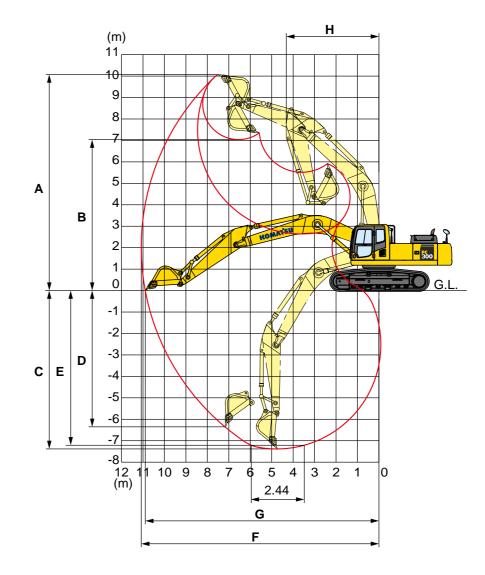
DIMENSIONS

Model		PC350LC -8M0			PC350LC-8M0 SE spec.		
Boom Length		6470 mm			6000 mm		
Arm Length		3185 mm	2200 mm	2550 mm	2200 mm		
Bucket Capacity		1.4 cum	2.1 cum	1.4 cum	2.3 cum		
Α	Overall length	11245 mm	11405 mm	11285 mm	10940 mm		
В	Length on ground (Transport)	5930 mm	6980 m	6640 mm	4485 mm		
С	Overall height (To top of boom)*	285 mm	3480 mm	3450 mm	3710 mm		
Model							
D	Overall width	3190 mm					
E	Overall height (To top of cab)*	3135 mm					
F	Ground clearance, counterweight	1185 mm					
G	Ground clearance (Minimum)	500 mm					
Н	Tail swing radius	3550 mm					
ı	Track length on ground	4030 mm					
J	Track length	4955 mm					
K	Track gauge	2590 mm					
L	Width of crawler	3190 mm					
М	Shoe width	600 mm					
N	Grouser height	36 mm					
0	Machine cab height	2585 mm					
Р	Machine cab width	3165 mm					
Q	Distance, swing center to rear end	3510 mm					



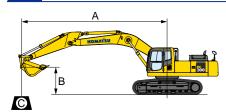
WORKING RANGE

Model		PC350LC-8M0			PC350LC-8M0 SE SPEC
Boom Length		6470 mm			6000 mm
Arm Length		3185 mm	2220 mm	2550 mm	2200 mm
Α	Max. digging height	10075 mm	9295 mm	9965 mm	9000 mm
В	Max. dumping height	7040 mm	6365 mm	6895 mm	6055 mm
C	Max. digging depth	7385 mm	6540 mm	6745 mm	6100 mm
D	Max. vertical wall digging depth	6270 mm	2870 mm	5840 mm	2000 mm
E	Max. digging depth of cut for 2440 mm level	6855 mm	6085 mm	6215 mm	5630 mm
F	Max. digging reach	11070 mm	10245 mm	10535 mm	9775 mm
G	Max. digging reach at ground level	10895 mm	10045 mm	10340 mm	9540 mm
Н	Min. swing radius	4325 mm	4470 mm	4455 mm	4085 mm
1179 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	200 kN	228 kN	200 kN	223 kN
		20400 kgf	23300 kgf	20400 kgf	22800 kgf
9 8.		44970 lb	51370 lb	44970 lb	50510 lb
==	Arm crowd force at power max.	165 kN	225 kN	193 kN	215 kN
SAE		16800 kgf	22900 kgf	19700 kgf	21900 kgf
ွ		37040 lb	50490 lb	43430 lb	48350 lb
ISO 6015 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	228 kN	259 kN	228 kN	246 kN
		23200 kgf	26400 kgf	23200 kgf	25100 kgf
		51150 lb	58200 lb	51150 lb	55300 lb
	Arm crowd force at power max.	171 kN	235 kN	201 kN	224 kN
		17400 kgf	24000 kgf	20500 kgf	22822 kgf
		38360 lb	52910 lb	45190 lb	50360 lb





LIFTING CAPACITY WITH LIFTING MODE



PC350LC-8M0

- A: Reach from swing center
- B: Bucket hook height
- C: Lifting capacity
- Cf: Rating over front
- Cs: Rating over side
- Rating at maximum reach

PC350LC-8M0 Boom: 6470 mm Arm: 2550 mm Bucket: 1.4 CUM														
A	•	€ MAX REACH		9.0m (29') 7.5		7.5 m	m (24') 6.0 m (19')		(19')	4.5 m (14')		3.0 m (9')		1.5 m (4.5')
В	RADIUS	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
7.5 m (24')	7.15 m (23.5')	*7200 (15800)	6400 (14100)											
6.0 m (19')	8.10 m (26.6')	*7050 (15600)	4950 (10900)			*7300 (16100)	5800 (12800)							
4.5 m (14')	8.69 m (2.5')	7000 (15400)	4150 (9200)			*7800 (17100)	5600 (12300)	* 9400 (20700)	8300 (18300)	*12600 (27700)	*12600 (27700)			
3.0 m (9')	8.99 m (29.5')	6400 (14200)	3750 (8300)	6400 (14100)	3750 (8300)	*8500 (18700)	5300 (11700)	*10750 (23700)	7750 (17100)	*14900 (32900)	12300 (27100)			
1.5 m (4')	9.03 m (29.6')	6250 (13800)	3650 (8000)	6250 (13800)	3650 (8000)	8550 (18900)	5050 (11100)	*11750 (25900)	7300 (16100)					
0.0 m (0')	8.81 m (28.9)	6400 (14200)	3700 (8200)	6150 (13600)	3550 (7800)	8350 (18400)	4850 (10700)	*12000 (26500)	7000 (15400)	*14000 (30900)	11050 (24400)			
–1.5 m (-4')	8.32 m (27.3')	7000 (15500)	4050 (9000)			8250 (18200)	4800 (10600)	*11700 (25700)	6900 (15200)	*15550 (34300)	11100 (24500)			
-3.0 m (-9')	7.49 m (24.6')	* 7450 (16400)	4900 (10800)			*7600 (16700)	4900 (10800)	*10450 (23000)	6950 (15400)	*13650 (30100)	11300 (24900)	*16550 (36500)	*16550 (36500)	
-4.5 m (-14')	6.20 m (20.3')	* 6850 (15100)	*6850 (15100)					*7750 (17000)	7200 (15900)	*10450 (23000)	*10450 (23000)	*12500 (27500)	*12500 (27500)	
-6.0 m (-19')														

*LOAD IS LIMITED BY HYDRAULIC CAPACITY RATHER THAN TIPPING. RATINGS ARE BASED ON SAE STANDARD No. J1097 RATED LOADS DO NOT EXCEED 87% OF HYDRAULIC LIFT CAPACITY 75% OF TIPPING LOAD.

PC350LC-	8M0	Boom: 6000 i	mm Arm:	2200 mm Bucket: 2.3 CUM										
A	€ MAX REACH			9.0m (29') 7.5 m (24')		1 (24')	6.0 m (19')		4.5 m (14')		3.0 m (9')		1.5 m (4.5')	
В	RADIUS	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
7.5 m (24')	5.96 m (19.5')	*8550 (18900)	*8550 (18900)					*8200 (18000)	*8200 (18000)					
6.0 m (19')	7.07 m (23.2')	*8100 (17900)	6150 (13600)					*8550 (18900)	*8500 (18700)					
4.5 m (14')	7.74 m (25.4')	*8000 (17700)	5000 (1100)			*8050 (17700)	5300 (11700)	* 9550 (21000)	8050 (17700)	*12650 (27900)	*12650 (27900)			
3.0 m (9')	8.08 m (26.5')	7600 (16800)	4450 (9800)			*8550 (18800)	5050 (11200)	*10800 (23900)	7650 (16800)	*14900 (32900)	12350 (27200)			
1.5 m (4')	8.12 m (26.6')	7350 (16200)	4250 (9400)			8350 (18500)	4850 (10700)	*11700 (25800)	7200 (15900)	*16650 (36700)	11450 (25300)			
0.0 m (0')	7.88 m (25.8)	7650 (16900)	4400 (9700)			8300 (18300)	4800 (10500)	*11900 (26300)	6950 (15400)	*16550 (36500)	11150 (24600)			
–1.5 m (-4')	7.32 m (24.0')	*8500 (18700)	4950 (1100)			*8050 (17800)	4750 (10400)	*11300 (24900)	6900 (15200)	*15200 (33500)	11100 (24700)			
-3.0 m (-9')	6.36 m (20.9')	* 8350 (18400)	6400 (14100)					*9400 (20700)	7050 (15500)	*12700 (28000)	11400 (25200)	*15250 (33600)	*15250 (33600)	
-4.5 m (-14')	4.76 m (15.6')	* 6950 (15300)	*6950 (15300)							*8100 (17800)	*8100 (17800)			
-6.0 m (-19')														

*LOAD IS LIMITED BY HYDRAULIC CAPACITY RATHER THAN TIPPING. RATINGS ARE BASED ON SAE STANDARD No. J1097 RATED LOADS DO NOT EXCEED 87% OF HYDRAULIC LIFT CAPACITY 75% OF TIPPING LOAD.

PC350LC-8M0 Boom: 6470 mm Arm: 3185 mm Bucket: 1.4 CUM														
A	(MAX REAC	Н	9.0m	9.0m (29') 7.5 m (24')		1 (24')	6.0 m (19')		4.5 m (14')		3.0 m (9')		1.5 m (4.5')
В	RADIUS	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
	7.84 m (25.7')	*4900 (10800)	*4900 (10800)			*6500 (14300)	6000 (13300)							
	8.71 m (28.6')	*4850 (10600)	4300 (9500)			*6650 (14600)	5950 (13100)							
	9.26 m (30.4')	*4950 (10900)	3700 (8100)	*6400 (14200)	3950 (8700)	*7200 (15900)	5700 (12600)	*8600 (19000)	8500 (18800)					
	9.54 m (31.3')	*5300 (11700)	3350 (7400)	6450 (14200)	3800 (8400)	*8000 (17600)	5400 (11900)	*10050 (22200)	7950 (17600)	*14450 (13800)	12800 (28200)			
	9.58 m (31.4')	5650 (12400)	3200 (7100)	6300 (13800)	3600 (8000)	*8600 (19000)	5100 (11200)	*11300 (24900)	7400 (16400)	*15950 (35200)	11700 (25800)			
	9.37 m (30.8)	5750 (12700)	3250 (7200)	6150 (13500)	3500 (7700)	8350 (18500)	4850 (10700)	*11850 (26200)	7050 (15500)	*16700 (36900)	11150 (24500)			
–1.5 m (-4')	8.91 m (29.2')	6200 (13700)	3550 (7800)	6100 (13400)	3450 (7600)	8250 (18200)	4750 (10500)	*11800 (26000)	6850 (15100)	*16200 (35700)	11000 (24200)	*9000 (19800)	*9000 (19800)	
-3.0 m (-9')	8.14 m (26.7')	*7000 (15500)	4150 (9100)			*8250 (18100)	4750 (10500)	*11000 (24200)	6850 (15100)	*14700 (32400)	11100 (24500)	*16150 (35600)	*16150 (35600)	
	6.98 m (22.9')	*6850 (15100)	*5550 (12100)					*9050 (19900)	7050 (15500)	*12050 (26600)	11300 (24900)	*15700 (34600)	*15700 (34600)	
-6.0 m (-19')	5.12 m (16.8')	*5550 (12300)	*5550 (12300)							*7400 (16300)	*7400 (16300)			

*LOAD IS LIMITED BY HYDRAULIC CAPACITY RATHER THAN TIPPING. RATINGS ARE BASED ON SAE STANDARD No. J1097 RATED LOADS DO NOT EXCEED 87% OF HYDRAULIC LIFT CAPACITY 75% OF TIPPING LOAD.



PC450LC-7

FLYWHEEL HORSEPOWER

Net: 330 HP 246 kW @ 1850 RPM

OPERATING WEIGHT

45,000 kg 99,210 lb

PC 450





PC450LC-7 HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR **WALK-AROUND**

HORSEPOWER Net: 330 HP 246 kW @ 1850 RPM

OPERATING WEIGHT 45,000 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY 2.6 - 3.1 m3 (SAE) 2.2 m³ (SAE) – Iron Ore 1.9 m³ (SAE) - Granite

Matchless Productivity

- High Production and Low Fuel Consumption in Active Mode
- Powerful turbocharged SAA6D125 engine generates Net HP of 330 HP
- Two Boom Settings for either powerful digging or smooth boom operation





PRODUCTIVITY FEATURES

Electronically-Controlled High Power Engine

The 246 kW (330 HP) Komatsu SAA6D125E-3 engine is providing in Komatsu PC450LC-7 is the largest in its class. High power and low fuel consumption are achieved by optimizing fuel injection via electronic control. It is an environment friendly engine which complies with EPA, EU and Japan Tier-2 emission regulations.

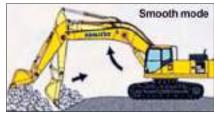


Hydraulic System equipped with engine speed sensor

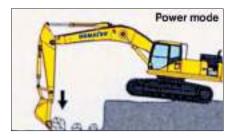
The pump is controlled by the engine speed sensor, so maximum horsepower is used at all times. This contributes to higher production and shorter cycle times.

Two Boom Settings

Smooth mode provides easy operation for gathering blasted rock or scraping down operation. When maximum digging force is needed, switch to **Power mode** for more effective excavating.



Boom floats upward, reduced lifting of machine front. This facilitates gathering blasted rock and scraping down operations



Boom pushing force is increased, ditch digging and box digging operation on hard ground are improved.

High Production and Low Fuel Consumption

High production and low fuel consumption are achieved through the following operation modes:

Active Mode 'A'

This mode handles large production by providing powerful and speedy operation, and achieves economic efficiency by substantial reduction in fuel consumption.

Economy Mode 'E'

Operation speed equal to that of the Active mode can be achieved when handling light duty operation while also keeping low fuel consumption.

Breaker Mode 'B'

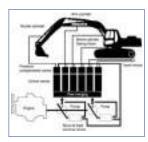
Flow can be adjusted from the cab to match special attachment requirements.

Lifting Mode 'L'

When the lifting mode is selected, lifting capacity is increased by 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.

ADVANCED HYDRAULICS

What is HvdrauMind?



It's a technologically complex yet mechanically simple system which supervises the work operations of the excavator. Its strength lies in its simplicity.

The system incorporates many major breakthroughs and has earned Komatsu almost 200 patents.

What are the benefits of the HydrauMind?

Power, versatility, manoeuvrability, controllability – you name it. Never has an excavator been so easy to operate, so natural, so intuitive. In a sense, you don't really operate it at all, you wear it.

For example, when the ground condition changes in digging...

You don't have to think about changing your lever strokes because the HydrauMind instantly, silently, automatically sends just the right amount of oil to the actuators at just the right pressure to accommodate the change.

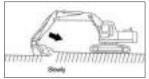
When you move the boom, arm and bucket at the same time...

All the equipment works organically with the optimum combination of speed and power as if it were a human hand.

The HydrauMind also makes it easy to change or add valves and work equipment. Moreover, because the system is hydraulic and not electronic, it ensures the best service availability in the industry.

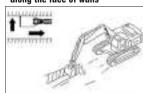
The HydrauMind System Makes Everything Easier

It is easier to fully load the buckets.



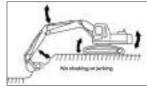
During simultaneous operations, the work equipment moves slowly at maximum power, without being influenced by the other actuators, so it is easy to fully load the bucket

It is easy to carry out digging work along the face of walls



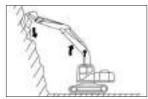
Lateral power pushing is powerful, allowing digging operation to be carried out efficiently.

The machine can carry out operations easily without any undue chassis vibration



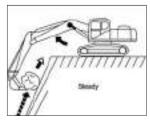
During simultaneous operations, there is no change in the work equipment speed caused by change in load. Thus, there is minimal chassis vibration.

It is easy to scrape down



Even without operating the lever to the maximum position, maximum digging power can be obtained, making it possible to carry out slow control.

It is easy to dig soft rock or dig up boulders



It is easy to control the boom RAISE, so the cutting edge does not deviate from the boulders





WORKING ENVIRONMENT

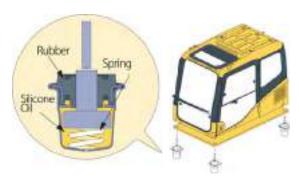
Spacious cabin

The cabin is spacious and air-cooled. An ergonomically-designed operator's seat and easy access to all control levers ensure maximum operator comfort and better concentration on the job.



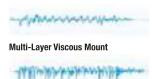
Low Vibration with Cab Damper Mounting

Komatsu PC450LC-7 uses a new, improved cab damper mount system that incorporates longer stroke and the addition of a spring. The new cab damper mounting combined with a strengthened left and right side deck aids vibration reduction at the operator's seat.



Comparison of Riding Comfort

Cab Damper Mounting



Conditions: - Floor vibration while travelling forward at high speed over obstacles. Pitch vertical direction on graph shows size of vibration

Adjustable seat and control levers



The suspension seat slides forward and backward together with the work equipment control levers to ensure the best operating position at all times.

Lock Lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement. Neutral start function only allows machine to be started in lock position.



RELIABILITY AND DURABILITY

Sturdy Frame Structure



The revolving frame, center frame, undercarriage and attachment structure are designed by using advanced three-dimensional CAD and FEM analysis technology.



Reliable Components

All the major machine components, such as engine. hydraulic pumps, hydraulic motors and control valves are exclusively designed and manufactured by Komatsu.

Highly Reliable Electronic Devices

Exclusively designed electronic devices have passed severe testing.

• Controller • Sensors

• Connectors • Heat-resistant wiring

Metal Guard Rings protect all the hydraulic cylinders and improve reliability.

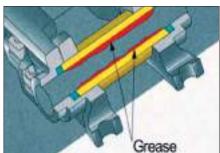
Track Link with Strut



Komatsu PC450LC-7 uses track links with strut providing superb durability.

Grease Sealed Track

Komatsu PC450LC-7 uses grease sealed tracks for extended undercarriage life.







ADVANCED EQUIPMENT MONITORING

EMMS (Equipment Management and Monitoring System)

The EMMS is a highly sophisticated system, controlling and monitoring all the excavator functions. The user interface is highly intuitive and provides the operator with easy access to a wide range of functions and operating information.

Automatic three-speed travel

Travel Speed					
High	Mid	Low			
5.5 km/h	4.4 km/h	3.0km/h			

The travel speed is automatically shifted from high to low speed, according to the ground conditions.

Easy to see and easy to use

Superb recognition on the colour LCD screens ensures that letters and numbers combined with colour images are exceptionally clear and easy-to-read. The high-resolution screen is easy to read in bright sunlight and in all lighting conditions.

Fingertip hydraulic pump oil flow adjustment

From the LCD monitor, you can automatically select the optimal hydraulic pump oil flow for breaking, crushing, and other operations in the B, A or E modes. Also, when simultaneously operating with attachments and work equipment, the flow to the attachment is reduced automatically, thus delivering a smooth movement of the work equipment. The EMMS's precise health-check system indicates the machine's running conditions. At the beginning of, and during, each work shift, abnormality information

and machine functions can be checked from the operator's seat.

Displays running conditions and abnormality indications

At the operator's fingertips: the EMMS monitors engine oil level, cooling water level, fuel level, engine water temperature, engine oil pressure, battery charging level, air filter clogging, and more. The monitor also indicates whenever abnormalities are detected.

Trouble data memory

The monitor stores and recalls electrical system and mechanical system failures and abnormalities for effective troubleshooting. Mechanical system failures cannot be erased, ensuring accurate documentation of vital service management information.

Maintenance Record

This feature acts as an active log book and keeps a record of the total maintenance carried out during its life cycle.

Real time monitoring system

The 'real time monitoring system' displays up to four different operating parameters simultaneously, giving a total overview for faster troubleshooting. Parameters include operating conditions such as hydraulic oil pressure, engine RPMs, various voltages and currents, and even temperature measurement, operation of switches and solenoids, engine and engine injector cut-off mode.



On-screen symbols Operating mode Service hours meter Operating mode Company mode Company mode Company mode

Service hours meter 72 'Economy' mode
Travel speed 3 'L'itting' mode
Engine water gauge 4 'Breaker' mode
Engine water 5 Travel speed selector switch
temperature warning 6 Auto deceleration

6 Hydraulic oil gauge
7 Hydraulic oil temperature warning

8 Fuel level gauge
9 Fuel low level warning
10 Auto deceleration

adjustment)

arning 10 Maintenance mode

11 Screen brightness adjustment
12 Input (return)
13 Input (down)

Input (confirm)

Window washer

Window wiper

Select (For attachment oil flow

Maintenance alert assistance

The information alerts when oils and filters need to be replaced.

SAFETY & MAINTENANCE

Pump/Engine Room Partition



Prevents oil from spraying on the engine if a hydraulic hose bursts.



Protective Guards

Thermal guard placed around high temperature parts of the engine provides adequate protection against accidental contacts, while the fan guard wards off impending hazards.



Non-skid sheet and large handrail



Steps with non-skid sheet provide safe grip when on the machine for maintenance work, while the large handrail with a provision to mount rear view mirror, supports easy climbing.

Easy Maintenance Radiator & Oil Cooler

Removal and installation of the radiator and oil cooler are made easier by locating side-by-side.

Reduced Maintenance Costs

Uses high performance filtering materials and long life oil. Extends the oil & filter replacement interval.



High-capacity Air Cleaner

High-capacity air cleaner is comparable to that of larger machine. The pre-cleaner can extend air cleaner life during long-term operation and prevents early clogging resulting in power decrease. Reliability is improved by a new seal design. Additional pre-air cleaner is provided to enhance the life of air filter.

Large Size Fuel Tank

Fuel tank capacity is 650 ltr (172 U.S gal) for extending operating hours before refueling. The fuel tank is treated for rust prevention and improved corrosion resistance.

Easy Access for Engine Inspection

Engine oil check pipe and oil filter are located on the left side of the engine to facilitate easy access for engine inspection.







SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Model Komatsu SAA6D125E-3
Type Water-cooled, 4 cycle, direct injection
AspirationTurbocharged, after-cooled
Number of cylinders
Bore
Stroke
Piston displacement
Flywheel Horse Power:
ISO9249/SAE J1349
Reted rpm
Governor All-speed control, electronic
Meets 2001 EPA, EU, and Japan Tier-2 emission regulations.



Туре		w
	Design) system, closed-center system with loa	ad
	sensing valves and pressure compensated valve	es
Number of	electable working modes	4

Main Pump:	
Туре	Variable displacement piston type
Pumps for	Boom, arm, bucket, swing, and travel circuits
Maximum flow	
Supply for control cir	cuitSelf-reducing valve
Hydraulic motors:	
Travel	2 x axial piston motor with parking brake

Swing1 x axial piston motor with swing holding brake					
Relief valve setting:					
Implement circuits	37.3 MPa 380 kgf/cm2 5,400 psi				
Travel circuit	37.3 MPa 380 kgf/cm2 5,400 psi				
Swing circuit	27.9 MPa 285 kgf/cm ² 4,050 psi				
Pilot circuit	3.2 MPa 33 kgf/cm2 470 psi				
Hydraulic cylinders:					
(Number of cylinders - bore x stroke x rod diameter)					

Boom	2 – 160 mm x 1570 mm x 110 mm
Arm	1 – 185 mm x 1820 mm x 120 mm
Bucket	1 – 185 mm x 1160 mm x 120 mm
1.9 m3 Bucket	1 – 160 mm x 1270 mm x 110 mm

DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostatic
Maximum drawbar pull	329 kN 33510 kgf 73,880 lb
Gradeability	70%, 35°
Maximum travel speed:	High5.5 km/h 3.4 mph
	(Auto-Shift) Low
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Parking brake	Mechanical disc brake



SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostatic
Swing reduction	Planetary gear
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic lock
Holding brake/Swing lock	Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	9.0 rpm



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame	X-frame
Track frame	Box-section
Seal of track	Sealed track
Track adjuster	Hydraulic
Number of shoes (each side)	49
Number of carrier rollers	2 each side
Number of track rollers (each side)	8



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT

Fuel tank	650 ltr 172 U.S. gal
Coolant	34.2 ltr 9.0 U.S. gal
Engine	
Final drive, each side	12.0 ltr 3.2 U.S. gal
Swing drive	16.2 ltr 4.3 U.S. gal
Hydraulic tank	248 ltr 65.5 U.S. gal



OPERATING WEIGHT

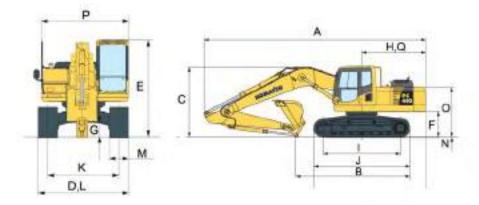
Operating weight including 7060 mm 23'2" one-piece boom, 2400 mm 7'10" arm, SAE heaped 2.6 m3 (3.4 yd3 bucket) capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

Komatsu PC450LC-7					
Shoes Operating Weight Ground Pressure					
600 mm 23.6"	45,000 kg 99,210lb	79.5 kPa 0.81 kgf/cm² 11.5 psi			



PC450LC-7 DIMENSIONS

	Configuration	7.06 m Boom, 2.4	4 m Arm	6.67 m Boom, 2.4	l m Arm	7.06 m Boom, 2.9	m Arm
Α	Overall Length	11905 mm	39'7"	11520 mm	37'10"	11995 mm	39'4"
В	Length on ground (transport)	8375 mm	27'6"	5920 mm	19'5"	7475 mm	24'6"
С	Overall height (to top of boom)	3850 mm	12'8"	3825 mm	12'7"	3745 mm	12'3"
D	Overall width	3340 mm	11'0"	3340 mm	11'0"	3340 mm	11'0"
Е	Overall height (to top cab)	3265 mm	10'9"	3265 mm	10'9"	3265 mm	10'9"
F	Ground Clearance, counter weight	1320 mm	4'4"	1320 mm	4'4"	1320 mm	4'4"
G	Ground Clearance (minimum)	550 mm	1'10"	550 mm	1'10"	550 mm	1'10"
Н	Tall swing radius	3645 mm	12'0"	3645 mm	12'0"	3645 mm	12'0"
1	Track length on ground	4350 mm	14'3"	4350 mm	14'3"	4350 mm	14'3"
J	Track length	5355 mm	17'7"	5355 mm	17'7"	5355 mm	17'7"
K	Track gauge	2740 mm	9'0"	2740 mm	9'0"	2740 mm	9'0"
L	Width of Crawler	3340 mm	10'11"	3340 mm	10'11"	3340 mm	10'11"
М	Shoe width	600 mm	23.6"	600 mm	23.6"	600 mm	23.6"
N	Grouser height	37 mm	1.5"	37 mm	1.5"	37 mm	1.5"
0	Machine cab height	2715 mm	8'11"	2715 mm	8'11"	2715 mm	8'11"
Р	Machine cab width	2995 mm	9'10"	2995 mm	9'10"	2995 mm	9'10"
Q	Distance, swing center to rear end	3605 mm	11'10"	3605 mm	11'10"	3605 mm	11'10"







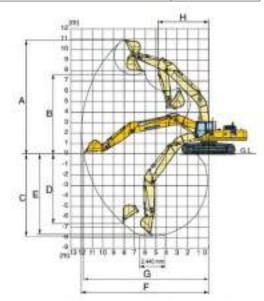






WORKING RANGE

	CONFIGURATION	7.06 m B 2.4 m A		6.67 m B 2.4 m A		7.06 m Boom, 2.9 m Arm	
Α	Max. digging height	10135 mm	33'3"	10175 mm	33'5"	10315 mm	33'10"
В	Max. dumping height	6845 mm	22'5"	6745 mm	22'2"	7030 mm	23'1"
С	Max. digging depth	7040 mm	23'1"	6700 mm	22'0"	7375 mm	24'2"
D	Max. vertical wall digging depth	3660 mm	12'0"	3090 mm	10'2"	5350 mm	17'7"
Е	Max, digging depth of cut for 8'level	6850 mm	22'6"	6530 mm	21'5"	7210 mm	23'8"
F	Max. digging reach	11235 mm	36'10"	11055 mm	36'3"	11500 mm	37'9"
G	Max. digging reach at ground level	11015 mm	36'2"	10825 mm	35'6"	11280 mm	37'0"
Н	Min. swing radius	4890 mm	16'1"	4605 mm	15'1"	4810 mm	15'9"
Rating	Bucket digging force at power max	287	kN 29,300) kgf/64,500 lb)	240 k 24,500 kgf/	
SAEF	Arm crowd force at power max	973 kN 97 900 kaf/61 /00 lb			245 k 25,000 kgf/		
Rating	Bucket digging force at power max	327 kN 33,400 kgf/73,600)	276 k 28,100 kgf/	
ISO B	Arm crowd force at power max	311	kN 31,700	kgf/70,000 lb	31,700 kgf/70,000 lb		





LIFTING CAPACITY



A : Reach for swing centre
B : Bucket height
C : Lifting Capacity
Cf : Rating over front
Cs : Rating over side

€ : Rating at maximum reach

PC450LC-7 - 6.67 m Boom x 2.4 m Arm x 3.1 m3 Bucket SAE Heaped

A		•	Мах	7.5	m	6.0) m	4.5	i m	3.0	m
В		C _f	C _s	C _f	C _s	C _f	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s
6.0 m	kg	9,150	6,350	*10,700	8,600						
4.5 m	kg	8,100	5,550	*11,650	8,300	*14,500	12,150	*19,600	19,400		
3.0 m	kg	7,600	5,150	11,550	7,900	*15,750	10,900				
1.5 m	kg	7,450	5,000	11,150	7,600	16,050	10,750				
0.0 m	kg	7,700	5,150	10,950	7,350	15,700	10,450	*15,800	*15,800		
-1.5 m	kg	8,400	5,650	10,850	7,300	15,600	10,350	*21,400	16,600		
-3.0 m	kg	9,950	6,700	10,950	7,400	*14,850	10,500	*18,750	16,900	*22,150	*22,150
-4.5 m	kg	*9,700	9,050			*11,100	10,400	*14,600	*14,600		

PC450LC-7 - 7.06 m Boom x 2.40 m Arm x 2.6 m³ Bucket SAE Heaped

A		•	Max	7.5	m	6.0	m	4.5	5 m	3.0	m
В		C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s
6.0 m	kg	9,150	6,350	*10,700	8,600						
4.5 m	kg	8,100	5,550	*11,650	8,300	*14,500	12,150	*19,600	19,400		
3.0 m	kg	7,600	5,150	11,550	7,900	*15,750	10,900				
1.5 m	kg	7,450	5,000	11,150	7,600	16,050	10,750				
0.0 m	kg	7,700	5,150	10,950	7,350	15,700	10,450	*15,800	*15,800		
-1.5 m	kg	8,400	5,650	10,850	7,300	15,600	10,350	*21,400	16,600		
-3.0 m	kg	9,950	6,700	10,950	7,400	*14,850	10,500	*18,750	16,900	*22,150	*22,150
-4.5 m	kg	*9,700	9,050			*11,100	10,400	*14,600	*14,600		

PC450LC-7 - 7.06 m Boom x 2.9 m Arm x 1.9 m³ Bucket SAE Heaped

A		€	Max	7.5	i m	6.0) m	4.5	i m	3.0	m
В		C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s	C,	C _s
6,0 m	kg	8,300	5,700	*9,950	8,650						
4,5 m	kg	7,400	5,000	*10,900	8,250	*13,300	12,200	*17,700	*17,700		
3,0 m	kg	6,950	4,600	*11,400	7,850	*15,050	11,150				
1,5 m	kg	6,800	4,500	11,050	7,450	15,950	10,650				
0,0 m	kg	7,000	4,600	10,750	7,200	15,500	10,250	*21,550	16,200		
-1,5 m	kg	7,550	5,000	10,600	7,050	15,350	10,100	*22,100	16,200	*15,450	*15,450
-3,0 m	kg	8,800	5,850	10,650	7,100	*15,300	10,150	*19,800	16,450	*24,100	*24,100
-4,5 m	kg	*9,550	7,650			*12,550	10,450	16,200	16,200	*20,100	*20,100









MEMO



BACKHOE BUCKET, ARM AND BOOM COMBINATION

Bucket capacity (heaped)		Wi	dth	Weight	Number of	Arm length	
SAE, PCSA	CECE	W/o side cutters / shrouds	With side cutters / shrouds	with cutters / shrouds	teeth	2.4 m 7'10"	2.9 m 9'6"
1.9 m³ 2.49 y³	1.70 m³ 2.22 y³	1510 mm 59.4"	1590 mm 62.6"	2240 kg 4935 lbs	4	0	Rock
2.2 m³ 2.88 y³	1.94 m³ 2.54 y³	1630 mm 64.2"	1770 mm 69.7"	2120 kg 4670 lbs	5	Iron ore	
2.6 m³ 3.40 y³	2.29 m³ 3.00 y³	1710 mm 67.3"	1845 mm 72.6"	2200 kg 4850 lbs	5	0	
2.85 m³ 3.73 y³	2.51 m³ 3.28 y³	1710 mm 67.3"	1845 mm 72.6"	2195 kg 4839 lbs	5		
3.1 m³ 4.05 y³	2.8 m³ 3.66 y³	1784 mm 70.2"	1900 mm 74.8"	2375 kg 5235 lbs	5		

- O: General purpose use with density upto 1.8 t/cu.m. (1.52 US ton/cu.yd.)
- ☐: General purpose use with density upto 1.6 t/cu.m. (1.35 US ton/cu.yd.)



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

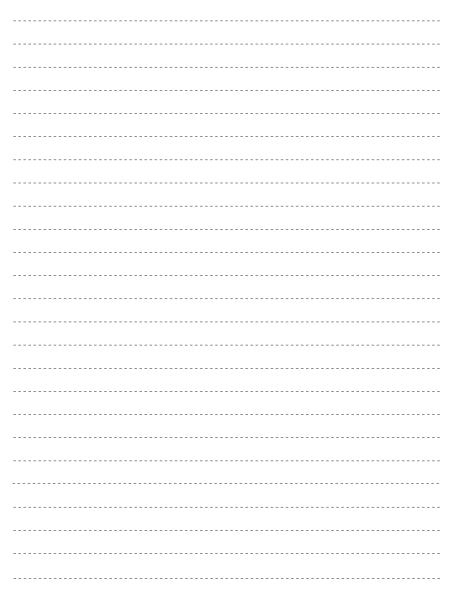
- · Alternator, 50 Ampere, 24V
- Auto-Deceleration
- Air Cleaner (Pre-filter)
- Air-conditioner(Cooler) Unit in Cabin
- All-weather steel cab (with multilayer) viscous damping mounts, tinted safety-glass windows, pull-up type front window with lock device, removable lower windshield, lockable door, floor mat & adjustable
- · Automatic Engine Warm-up System
- · Automatic de-aeration system for fuel line
- Batteries, 140 Ah/2 x 12V
- Boom holding valve
- Corrosion resistor
- Counterweight
- Dry type air cleaner, double element

- Electric horn
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D125E-3
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Fan guard structure
- Fuel Lift Pump
- Fuel Filters (2 micron) 2 Nos.
- Hydraulic track adjusters (each side)
- Multi function Colour Monitor panel Power maximizing system
- PPC hydraulic control system
- Radiator & Oil Cooler dust proof net
- Rear view mirror, R.H.
- Starter motor, 11 kW/24 v x 1
- Structures reinforced
- Suspension Seat
- Suction fan Tool Box
- Track guiding guard, center section
- Track roller 8 each side

- Track shoe 600 mm 24" triple grouser
- Two settings for boom
- Undercarriage LC
- Water Separator
- Working light, 2 (boom and RH) Working mode selection system
- One piece boom 7060 mm
- Arm 2400 mm
- Bucket 2.6 m³

Optional Equipment

- · Automatic Centralized Lubrication System
- Bolt on top guard and front guard (operator protective guard)
- Service valve



Product improvement is a continuous process. Specifications given in this publication are therefore subject to change without notice. Photographs depicted may be of optional equipment.



KOMATSU®

PC500LC-10R

★ Head Office Zones Territories EQUIP-CARE Opening 1800 833 9990 **Dealer Outlets** L&T Service Centers Unified program for sales & after sales support.

Product improvement is a continuous process. Specifications given in this publication are therefore subject to change without notice. Photographs depicted may be of optional equipment

Printed on 05-2022 www.komatsuindia.in

KOMATSU®

Marketed & Serviced by:



L&T Construction & Mining Machinery

Larsen & Toubro Limited

1st Floor Lakshminarayan Complex, 10/1 Palace Road, Bengaluru- 560 052 Tel: 080 40401700 / 900 E-mail: ceb@larsentoubro.com www.lntcmb.com

Zonal Offices:

Delhi (011) 40819500 Nagpur (0712) 6606441/2260025 Jaipur (0141) 4385900

Kolkata (033) 44002433/22831442 Hyderabad (040) 47575064

Pune (020) 48544259 Chennai (044) 40706864

Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice. **KOMATSU** is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

HYDRAULIC EXCAVATOR



Photos may include optional equipment.

Net: 269 kW 360 HP/1900 min⁻¹

OPERATING WEIGHT

49400 - 51300 kg

BUCKET CAPACITY

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 270 kW 362 HP/1900 min-1

3.5 m3 / 3.7 m3

CIN: L99999MH1946PLC004768

WALK-AROUND

Powerful digging operation

Higher Returns, Peace of Mind.



SAFETY & COMFORT

- Large comfortable cab Larger bucket capacity
 - Travel Alarm
 - Engine shutdown secondary switch
 - Rear view monitor system (Optional)

FUEL EFFICIENCY

Compared to PC450LC-8

Photos may include optional equipment.

INFORMATION & COMMUNICATION **TECHNOLOGY (ICT) & KOMTRAX**

- High resolution Large Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) monitor
- Equipment Management Monitoring System
- KOMTRAX

LOWER FUEL CONSUMPTION

- Advanced management system of variable engine speed matching control
- · Viscous fan clutch system
- Reduction of hydraulic loss in pipes and tubes
- Auto idle stop function

LOWER MAINTENANCE COST

- Less maintenance time
- System to detect and prevent failure of major components
- Monitor panel displays a wide range of maintenance information for quick action

HIGHER PRODUCTIVITY

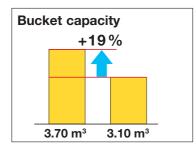


Increase Productivity

Productivity (cu.m/l) is improved by large bucket capacity and superior machine performance. It improves productivity and economical performance.

Large capacity buckets

Buckets of capacity 3.50 m³ & 3.70 m³ are available. It can be matched for different applications.

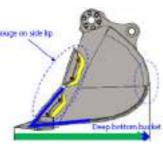


Bucket capacity

3.50 m³ & 3.70 m³

New bucket design

By optimizing the shape of the side edge, it increases the penetration force and reduces the penetration resistance. New bucket profile increases production and optimises fuel consumption and wear reduction.

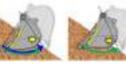






Increased penetrability by sharpening tip angle of the bucket

New Design Conventional Bucket Bucket



Low excavation resistance due to modified profile of the bucket

Powerful digging operation

Digging in P mode has become powerful by improving hydraulic control. When more power is needed, the engine output is powered up by the one-touch power max. function and you can dig stronger. Increasing engine power achieves high performance.

Engine horsepower

Compared to PC450LC-8

4% up (360 HP **4**345 HP)

One-touch power max. function

Digging force increases for 8.5 seconds of operation when left knob switch called one-touch power max switch is continuously pressed. You can normally use E mode to reduce fuel consumption. Use this function only when

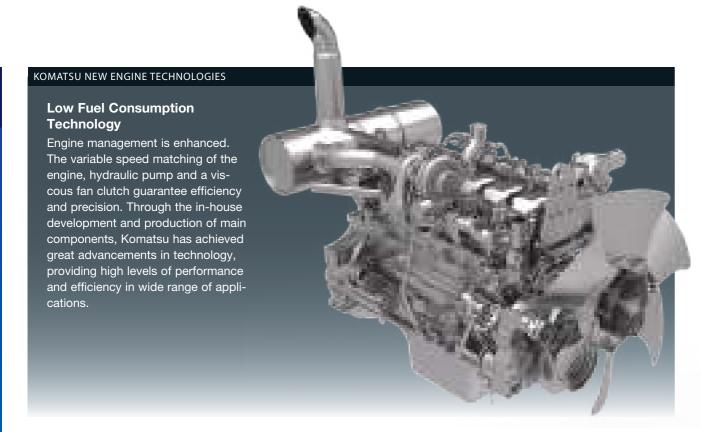
needing extreme digging power temporarily, even more than P mode.

One-touch power max. switch





LOWER FUEL CONSUMPTION

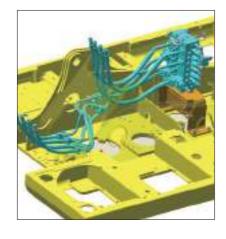


Improvement of engine combustion efficiency

By optimizing the fuel injection control, the engine combustion efficiency has improved. This technology has achieved both high power output and low fuel consumption.

Reduction of hydraulic pressure loss

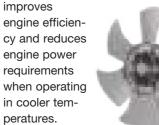
The internal shape of the control valves, piping diameter and fitting shape have been thoroughly revised. With this improvement, hydraulic loss is reduced and contributes to low fuel consumption.



Reduced fan speed and fan drive loss

A speed controlled viscous fan

clutch and large diameter fan improves engine efficiency and reduces engine power requirements when operating



Enhanced engine-pump matching control

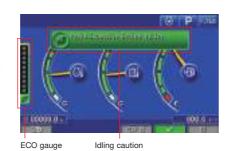
Large displacement hydraulic main pumps provide high flow output at low engine RPM. Further, by building in optimum matching of the engine and pump, it keeps high operability and workability. This technology achieves high production and low fuel consumption.

Assists Energy-saving Operations

ECO gauge

Equipped with the ECO gauge that can be recognized at a glance on

the multi-function color monitor for environment-friendly energy-saving operations. Allows focus on operation in the green range with reduced CO₂ emissions and Improved fuel efficiency.



Idling caution

To prevent unnecessary fuel consumption, an idling caution is displayed on the monitor, if the engine idles for 5 minutes or more.

Auto idle stop function

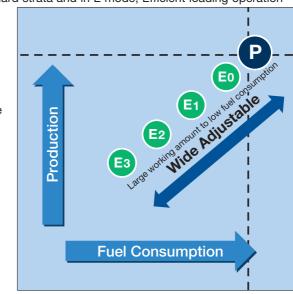
When the engine has been idling for certain time, the engine stops automatically to reduce unnecessary fuel consumption and exhaust emissions. The duration before the engine shutdown can be easily programmed.

Fuel Saving Support Functions

Select a working mode that suits your purpose

In P mode, Handling Hard strata and in E mode, Efficient loading operation

are implemented. E mode can be adjusted widely from E0 to E3 mode, and it adapts flexibly to customer's demands. Komatsu tuned each work mode precisely, ensuring high operability and workability. Just by selecting the work mode, it provides the best performance in demanding applications.

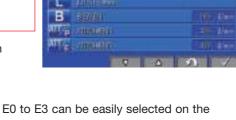


P (Power mode):

Handling hard strata Fast cycle time

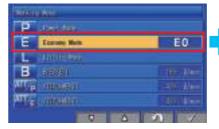
E (Economy mode):

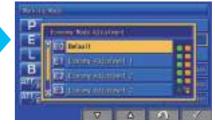
Efficient loading operation



Easy selectable E mode

Compared with the earlier model, E0 to E3 can be easily selected on the monitor.



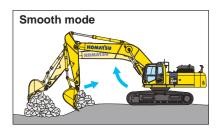


In addition to the above modes there are also the following modes. Please select the appropriate mode according to the application.

Working Mode	Application	Advantages
L	Lifting mode	Suitable attachment speed Lifting capacity is increased 7% by raising hydraulic pressure.
В	Breaker mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow
ATT/P	Attachment Power mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2way Power mode
ATT/E	Attachment Economy mode	Optimum engine rpm, hydraulic flow, 2way Economy mode

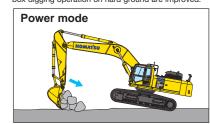
Two-mode Setting for Boom

Smooth mode provides easy operation for gathering blasted rock or scraping down operation. When maximum digging force is needed, switch to Power mode for more effective excavating.



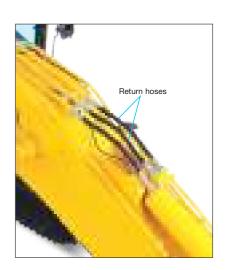
Boom floats upward, reducing lifting of machine front. down operations.

Boom pushing force is increased, ditch digging and box digging operation on hard ground are improved.



Smooth Loading Operation

Two return hoses improve hydraulic performance. In the arm out function, a portion of the oil is returned directly to the tank providing smooth operation.

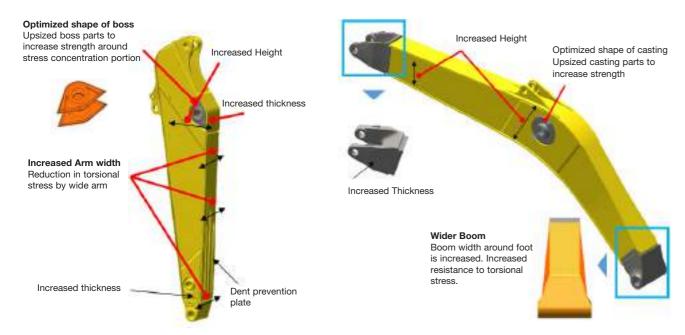


DURABILITY & RELIABILITY

High Strength Work Equipment & Frames to work with large size bucket. It has Durability to Withstand Demanding Conditions in wide range of mining Sites.

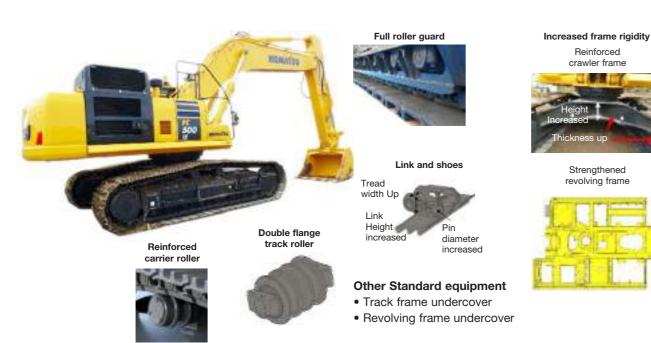
New reinforced work equipment with excellent durability and reliability

Komatsu has remodeled stronger reinforced work equipment to adapt larger size bucket. It is much suitable for working in severe conditions. The newly designed working equipment achieves high durability and reliability with high performance.



Heavy duty undercarriage

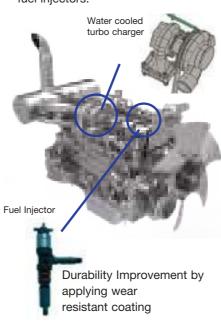
PC500LC-10R comes with newly designed larger undercarriage as standard. Durability and reliability are significantly improved by reinforcing and increasing the size of all components.





Improved Engine Reliability

Reliability of engine is improved by new water cooled turbo and new fuel injectors.



O-ring Face Seal

The hydraulic hose seal method has been changed from a conventional taper seal to an O-ring seal. This provides improved sealing perfor-



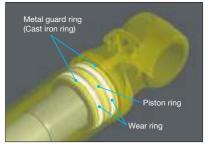
Fuel Pre-filter with water separator

Removes water and contaminants from fuel to enhance the fuel system reliability.



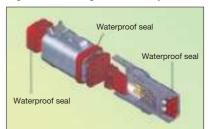
Metal Guard Rings

Metal guard rings protect all the hydraulic cylinders and improve reliability.



Shield Connectors

Shield connectors provide tight sealing and have higher reliability.



Reinforced crawler frame

EASY SERVICEABILITY



Maintenance is a key element of operating cost. Komatsu focused on reducing maintenance time & cost.

Centralized filters

All filter cartridges are located in pump compartment where they are easily accessible and reduce time of periodical maintenance.



Easy cleaning of cooling unit

Cleanability of the cooling unit has been improved. It is effective on dusty sites.

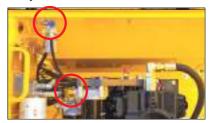
- Improvement in core cleanability by enabling openable engine hood side cover
- Single piece Oil cooler, no more space for dust accumulation





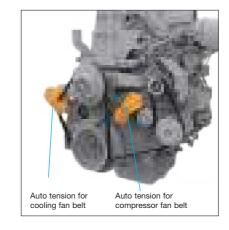
Easy oil sampling

Easy oil sampling ports are added. It helps to get oil samples that are agitated properly & helps in accurate analysis.



Auto tension fan belt

Belt tension for cooling fan & compressor and alternator are adjusted automatically.



Easy maintenance time management

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Without	100600	Seem
of the following		
Other Street,		
March of Processor		
March to both and	(00)	(6)
Post Name Filler Owner		1072
0 0 1 0	10	

Easy to know maintenance time when using breaker

In addition to the above functions, it monitors the breaker usage time. Since the replacement time will be changed depending on the breaker usage time, monitor can notify the optimum replacement time.



Detect abnormality of hydraulic circuit Clogging sensor for hydraulic oil as standard

When the hydraulic oil filter is clogged, the caution message pops up on the monitor to notify filter replacement. It helps to take preventive measures to avoid breakdown & repair cost.



Clogging hydraulic oil filter caution

Battery disconnect switch

A battery disconnect switch allows a technician to disconnect the power supply and lock out before servicing or maintenance of the machine. It also minimize discharge of the battery during non operation for long-term. System operating lamp tells the timing of battery disconnect & prevent controller failures.



Pre-cleaner for dusty condition

Even in dusty places, by installing pre-cleaner coupled with the large air cleaner, the frequency of cleaning the air cleaner will be reduced.

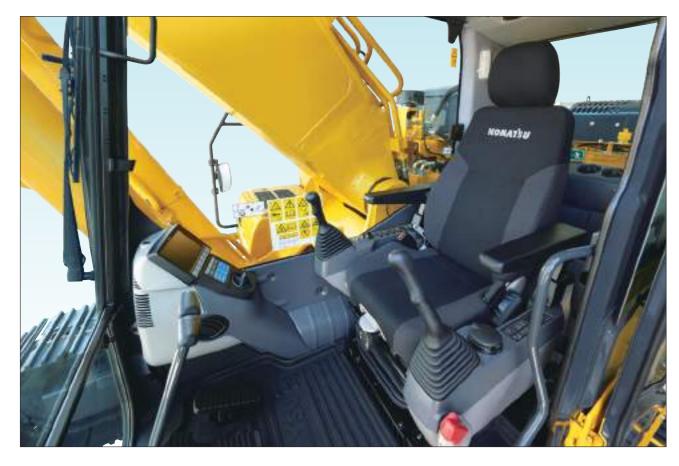
Other Features

Easy to check level of hydraulic oil

Electric priming pump

Blow-by pressure detection Clogging sensor for breaker line (Optional)

SAFETY & COMFORT



Ensuring Operator's Comfort contributes to increased Safety and Productivity.

Wide newly-designed cab

Newly-designed wide spacious cab includes seat with reclining backrest. The seat height and longitudinal inclination are easily adjusted using a pull-up lever. You can set the appropriate operational posture of armrest together with the console. Reclining the seat further enables you to place it into the fully flat state with the headrest attached.

New adjustable armrest without tools

The height of the armrest is quickly and easily adjusted without tools.



Pressurized cab

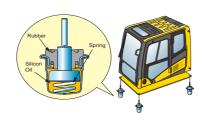
Pressurizing inside the cab to minimize the dust entering from out side. It keeps the cab clean.

Low cab noise

With substantially low noise, you can comfortably operate for long hours. Ambient noise is also reduced, reducing the stress of workers near the machine.

Low vibration with cab damper mounting

The cab damper mounting combined with high rigidity deck aids in vibration reduction at operator seat.



Suspension seat

Suspension seat with weight adjustment function as standard equipment. This seat can reduce fatigue even in operation for a long time.

Automatic A/C

It adjusts automatically to a comfortable temperature throughout the year, even in hot and cold areas.

Lock lever

Locks the hydraulic pressure to prevent unintentional movement.

Neutral start function allows machine to be started only in lock position.



Lock lever auto lock function

If the work equipment lever is not in the neutral position when the hydraulic lock lever is released, the equipment is automatically stopped. The auto stop state is shown on the monitor screen.



Engine shutdown secondary switch

Engine stop switch added for emergency use.



Seat belt caution indicator



Hand rails prevent accidental fall-off



Large serrated steps



OPG top guard level 2 (optional)



Cab front full height guard level 2 (optional)



Rear view monitor system

(Optional)

The operator can view the rear of the machine on monitor screen.





Rear view image on monitor

Fan guards

Fan guards are placed around fan drive.

Pump/engine room partition

Pump/engine room partition prevents oil from spraying onto the engine if a hydraulic hose fails.

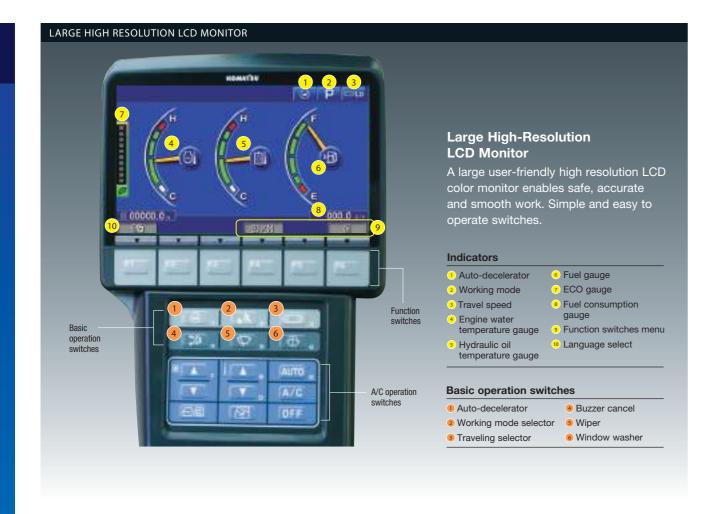




Other Features AUX 12 V power supply

Magazine box
Cool & hot box
Luggage box

ICT & KOMTRAX

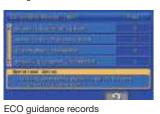


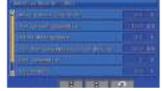
Supports Efficient Operation

The main screen displays advices for promoting energysaving operations as needed. The operator can use the ECO guidance menu to check the operation records, ECO guidance records, average fuel consumption logs, etc.



ECO guidance ECO guidance menu





Operation records

Equipment Management Monitoring System

Monitor function

Controller monitors engine oil level, coolant temperature, battery charge air clogging, etc. If the controller finds any abnormality, it is displayed on the LCD.

Maintenance function

The monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on the LCD when the replacement interval is reached.

Trouble data memory function

Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.



Average fuel consumption logs

KOMTRAX

Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data for optimizing fleet efficiency.

Energy Saving Operation Report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-savings operation report based on operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you run the business efficiently.



Equipment Management Support

Through the web application, a variety of search parameters are available to quickly find information about specific machines based on key factors. Moreover, KOMTRAX finds out machines with problems from your fleet and shows you through an optimal interface.



Periodic maintenance

The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

15

Optimum Strategy for Efficient Work

With the detailed information that KOMTRAX provides, you can manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make informed decisions and long-term strategy.



PRODUCT SUPPORT





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation costs, L&T CMB (Komatsu Distributor) provides total equipment support before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

L&T CMB will study the customer jobsite and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or to replace the existing ones.

Technical support

L&T CMB offers effective services for maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program
- Undercarriage inspection service
- Hose inspection

Genuine parts and lubricants

Komatsu Genuine oil is developed keeping in mind system design & requirements of the machine. Komatsu genuine parts are designed for the machine & together with Komatsu Genuine oils ensures superior performance & reliability of the machine.

Repair & maintenance service

L&T CMB offers periodical maintenance and quality repair service to the customers, utilizing and promoting Komatsu programs.

Service contract

L&T CMB offers several service package of repair and maintenance for a contracted period with optimum cost. L&T CMB's superior after sales support & service contract ensures "true peace of mind" for our Customers.

Operator training

L&T CMB with strong & experienced training centres ensures best in class operator training. Skill & training of operators enables them to operate machine safely & efficiently while ensuring timely maintenance of machine.

Product support

Komatsu machines are supported by L&T CMB's strong nationwide network of dealerships, parts outlets and service centres.

Parts availability

L&T CMB with its central warehouse at Nagpur and nationwide network of dealership ensure ready availability and highest first pick rate of genuine and quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.



SPECIFICATIONS

NGINE

Model	
Туре	Water-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injection
Aspiration	Turbocharged, aftercooled
Number of cylinders	
Bore/stroke	125 mm/150 mm
Piston displacement	
Horsepower:	
SAE J1995	Gross 270 kW 362 HP
ISO 9249 / SAE J1349	Net 269 kW 360 HP
Rated rpm	1900 min-1
Fan drive method for radiator	cooling
	with viscous fan clutch
Governor	All-speed control, electronic



HYDRAULICS

Type. HydrauMind (Hydraulic Mechanical Intelligence New Design) system, closed-center system with load sensing valves and pressure compensated valves Number of selectable working modes 6 Main pump:

Type pistori type
Pumps for Boom, arm, bucket, swing, and travel circuits
Maximum flow
Supply for control circuit Self-reducing valve
Hydraulic motors:
Travel 2 x axial piston motors with parking brake
Swing 1 x axial piston motor with swing holding brake
Relief valve setting:
Implement circuits

p.cc c cac		
Travel circuit	MPa 380	kgf/cm ²
Swing circuit27.9	MPa 285	kgf/cm ²
Pilot circuit	MPa 33	kgf/cm ²
Hydraulic cylinders:		

Number of cylinders - bore x strok	e x rou diarrieter)
Boom	2–170 mm x 1570 mm x 115 mm
Arm	
Std	1–185 mm x 1985 mm x 130 mm
SE	1–185 mm x 1800 mm x 130 mm
Bucket	

 Std
 1–160 mm x 1450 mm x 115 mm

 SE
 1–185 mm x 1350 mm x 130 mm

SWING SYSTEM

Drive method	Hydrostation
Swing reduction	Planetary gea
Swing circle lubrication	Grease-bathed
Service brake	Hydraulic locl
Holding brake/Swing lock	Mechanical disc brake
Swing speed	9.1 min-



UNDERCARRIAGE

Center frame
Track frame
Seal of track Sealed track
Track adjuster
Number of shoes (Each side) 49
Number of carrier rollers (Each side) 2
Number of track rollers (Each side) 8



COOLANT AND LUBRICANT CAPACITY (REFILLING)

uel tank	640
Coolant	45.0
ingine	37.0
inal drive (Each side)	9.0
Swing drive	17.0
lydraulic tank	279



DRIVES AND BRAKES

Steering control	Two levers with pedals
Drive method	Hydrostatic
Maximum drawbar pull.	329 kN 33550 kg
Gradeability	70%, 35°
Maximum travel speed:	High 5.5 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Mid4.2 km/h
(Auto-shift)	Low 3.0 km/h
Service brake/parking bral	ke Hydraulic lock/mechanical disc brake

17



OPERATING WEIGHT (APPROXIMATE)

Operating weight including one-piece boom, arm, ISO 7451 heaped backhoe bucket, rated capacity of lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, operator, and standard equipment.

Shoes	PC500LC-10R Std Spec. Boom: 6670 mm Arm: 2400 mm Bucket : 3.7 m ³				
	Operating Weight	Ground Pressure			
600 mm 50060 kg 87.3 kPa 0.89 kgf/cm ²		87.3 kPa 0.89 kgf/cm ²			

Bucket Line-up

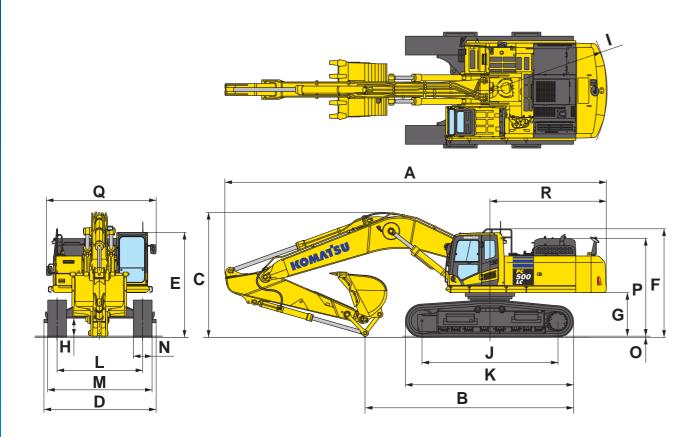
	Consoity Width (mm)			(mm)	Weight*	Tooth			
Category	Shape	Capacity (m³)	With Side Shrouds, Side Cutters	Without Side Shrouds, Side Cutters	(kg)	Quantity	6.67 + 2.4 SE Spec.	6.67 + 2.9 SE Spec.	
GP	New shape bucket	3.70	3.70 1840 1705		2390	5			
HD	New shape bucket	ape 3.50 1910 1910		1910	2720	5	0	×	

^{*} With side shrouds, side cutters O: Material density up to 1.8 t/m³ D: Material density up to 1.5 t/m³ ×: Not usable

DIMENSIONS

Mode	l	PC500LC-1	OR SE Spec.				
Boom	Length	6670 mm	6670 mm				
Arm L	ength	2400 mm	2900 mm				
Α	Overall length	11945 mm	11855 mm				
В	Length on ground (Transport)	8095 mm	7835 mm				
C	Overall height (To top of boom)*	3980 mm	4220 mm				
D	Overall width	3580	mm				
Е	Overall height (To top of cab)*	3360	mm				
F	Overall height (To top of handrail)*	3460	mm				
G	Ground clearance, counterweight	1385	mm				
Н	Ground clearance (Minimum)	570	mm				
- 1	Tail swing radius	3765	mm				
J	Track length on ground	4350	mm				
K	Track length	5385	mm				
L	Track gauge	2740	mm				
M	Width of crawler	3340	mm				
N	Shoe width	600	mm				
0	Grouser height	37	37 mm				
Р	Machine height to top engine cover	3110	3110 mm				
Q	Machine upper width	3520	3520 mm				
R	Distance, swing center to rear end	3725	mm				

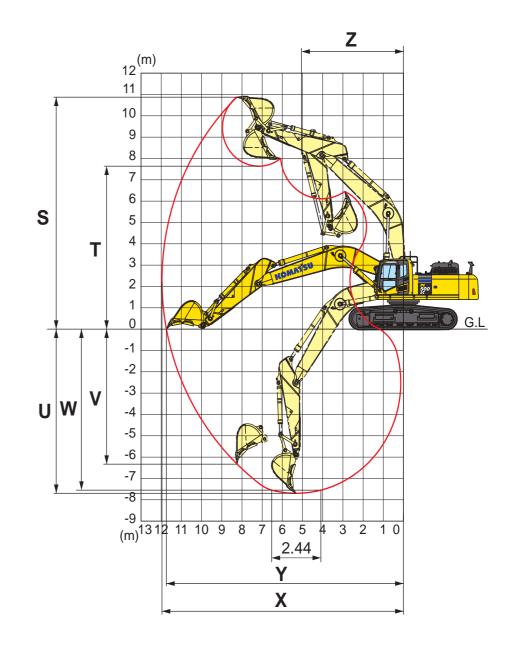
^{*} Including grouser height





WORKING RANGE

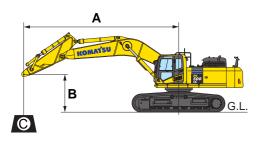
Boom	Length	6670 mm	6670 mm
Arm L	ength	2400 mm	2900 mm
S	Max. digging height	10200 mm	10225 mm
T	Max. dumping height	6675 mm	6750 mm
U	Max. digging depth	6640 mm	7150 mm
V	Max. vertical wall digging depth	2495 mm	2725 mm
W	Max. digging depth of cut for 2440 mm level	6480 mm	7000 mm
Х	Max. digging reach	10945 mm	11350 mm
Y	Max. digging reach at ground level	10720 mm	11135 mm
Z	Min. swing radius	4720 mm	4685 mm
AE 1179 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	304 kN 31000 kgf	304 kN 31000 kgf
SAE	Arm crowd force at power max.	262 kN 26700 kgf	244 kN 24900 kgf
SO 6015 Rating	Bucket digging force at power max.	339 kN 34600 kgf	339 kN 34600 kgf
ISO (Arm crowd force at power max.	273 kN 27800 kgf	251 kN 25600 kgf



21



LIFTING CAPACITY WITH LIFTING MODE



PC500LC-10R Spec.

- A: Reach from swing center
- B: Arm top pin height
- C: Lifting capacity
- Cf: Rating over front Cs: Rating over side
- : Rating at maximum reach

Conditions:

- 6670 mm one-piece boom
- 2400 mm arm
- Without bucket

PC500LC-10F	R Spec.	Arm: 2400 mn	n Witho	ut bucket	Shoe: 600 m	nm triple grous	er						
A	● MAX		MAX 9.0 m		7.5	7.5 m		6.0 m		4.5 m		3.0 m	
В	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	
6.0 m	*14320 kg	9530 kg			*14670 kg	10620 kg	*16590 kg	15110 kg					
4.5 m	13130 kg	8380 kg			*15360 kg	10290 kg	*18400 kg	14340 kg					
3.0 m	12320 kg	7810 kg			15780 kg	9890 kg	*20200 kg	13560 kg					
1.5 m	12160 kg	7660 kg			15410 kg	9570 kg	*21190 kg	13000 kg					
0 m	12620 kg	7910 kg			15210 kg	9390 kg	*20990 kg	12750 kg					
-1.5 m	13950 kg	8680 kg			15200 kg	9380 kg	*19550 kg	12730 kg	*24530 kg	19660 kg			
-3.0 m	*13310 kg	10440 kg					*16490 kg	12960 kg	*20530 kg	20000 kg	*22950 kg	*22950 kg	
-4.5 m													

PC500LC-10R Spec. Arm:		Arm: 2900 mr	n Witho	ut bucket	Shoe: 600 m	ım triple grous	ser					
A	A ⊕ MAX		9.0 m		7.5 m 6.0		i.0 m 4.		i m	3.0	3.0 m	
В	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs	Cf	Cs
6.0 m	*13210 kg	8720 kg			*13810 kg	10660 kg	*15530 kg	15250 kg				
4.5 m	12130 kg	7720 kg			*14650 kg	10270 kg	*17410 kg	14430 kg	*22870 kg	22390 kg		
3.0 m	11410 kg	7210 kg	11840 kg	7470 kg	*15610 kg	9830 kg	*19380 kg	13570 kg				
1.5 m	11240 kg	7050 kg	11630 kg	7280 kg	15300 kg	9450 kg	*20690 kg	12910 kg				
0 m	11600 kg	7230 kg			15020 kg	9210 kg	*20900 kg	12550 kg	*24620 kg	19170 kg		
-1.5 m	12660 kg	7850 kg			14950 kg	9140 kg	*19910 kg	12460 kg	*25680 kg	19220 kg		
-3.0 m	*13050 kg	9220 kg			*13210 kg	9300 kg	*17480 kg	12600 kg	*22140 kg	19510 kg	*26930 kg	*26930 kg
-4.5 m	*11780 kg	*11780 kg					*12460 kg	*12460 kg	*16350 kg	*16350 kg		

^{*} Load is limited by hydraulic capacity rather than tipping. Ratings are based on ISO standard No.10567. Rated loads do not exceed 87% of hydraulic lift capacity or 75% of tipping load.



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

ENGINE

- Air pre-cleaner
- Automatic engine warm-up system
- B20 Bio diesel Compliant
- Coolant filter
- Dry type air cleaner, double element
- Electric priming pump
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D125E-5
- Engine overheat prevention system
- Fan clutch
- Fuel pre-filter (With water separator)
- Radiator and oil cooler dust proof net

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

- Alternator, 24 V/60 A brushless
- Auto-decelerator
- Batteries, 2 X 12 V/140 Ah
- Battery disconnect switch with operation lamp
- Electric horn
- Starting motor, 24 V/11 kW

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Arm holding valve
- Boom holding valve
- Clogging sensor for hydraulic oil return filter
- Inline filter
- Pilot filter
- Power maximizing system
- Pressure Proportional Control (PPC) hydraulic control system
- Two-mode setting for boom
- Working mode selection system

GUARDS AND COVERS

- Fan guard structure
- Heavy duty revolving frame undercover
- Revolving frame deck guard

UNDERCARRIAGE

- Hydraulic track adjusters (Each side)
- Track frame undercover
- Track roller
- -8 each side

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- A/C with defroster
- AUX equipped with radio
- Large high resolution LCD monitor
- Lock lever
- Rear view mirrors (RH, LH, sidewise, rear)
- Seat belt, retractable
- Sun roller blind
- Suspension seat

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

- Oil sampling port (Engine & hydraulic)
- Preventive Maintenance (PM) serviceconnector

OTHER EQUIPMENT

- Blow-by sensor
- Counterweight, 10740 kg
- KOMTRAX
- Rear reflector
- Slip-resistant platesTravel alarm

OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

• Working lights (1 on counterweight)

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

- Attachment piping
- Clogging sensor for breaker return filter
- Service valve

GUARDS AND COVERS

- Bolt-on top guard, OPG top guard level 2
- Cab front guard
 Full height guard, OPG level 2

OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

- Rear view monitor system
- Sun roller blind

WORK EQUIPMENT

Arms

-PC500LC-10R spec. 2900 mm arm assembly

SERVICING EQUIPMENT

Fuel refill pump

Standard/optional equipment may change. For more details, please consult your distributer.



МЕМО

KOMATSU

GD535-6







Engine power Gross: 110 kW / 148 HP@2000 min⁻¹ Net: 107 kW / 144 HP@2000 min⁻¹

Operating weight 15040 kg

Blade length 3.71 m

- \bullet Up to 20% blended biodiesel fuel and paraffine fuel can be used. Please consult your Komatsu distributor for detail.
- Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.
- **KOMATSU** is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan.

Your Komatsu partner:





Exceptional workability and

environmental performance

Engine power

Gross: 110 kW / 148 HP@2000 min-1 Net: 107 kW / 144 HP@2000 min⁻¹

Operating weight

15040 kg

3.71 m



Productivity Features

- Auto-manual selectable lock-up torque converter transmission
- Long wheelbase & short turning radius

Ecology & Economy Features

- Komatsu's new CEV Stage-V emission regulations-compliant engine New
- Engine power mode selection system

Operator Environment Features

- Excellent visibility
- ROPS/FOPS canopy (ISO 3471/ISO 3449)
- Engine shutdown secondary switch New
- Operator seat with height adjustment New
- Work equipment lock lever New

Maintenance Features

- Maintenance information display
- Improved cooling unit cleaning efficiency using reverse hydraulic-driven fan New
- Maintenance-free battery
 New
- Battery disconnect switch New

Reliability Features

• Components that prevent machine failure and improve machine reliability

Information and Communication Technology (ICT)

• High resolution 3.5-inch Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) color monitor

GD535-6

Productivity Features



2) Creep mode

Torque converter transmission introduces Creep mode which provides constant low speed without acceleration and brake control. Optimized machine speed and great stability of torque converter boosts up precise control during fine grading.

4) Electronic over-speed protection

Restricts downshifting until reducing the travel speed to the safe range of shift changing.

3) Low effort inching pedal

Gives the operator precise control of machine movement. This is especially important for operators who have previous experience with operating a manual mode motor grader.

Long wheelbase & short turning radius

The long wheelbase enables high leveling performance and easier to set the blade position. Long wheelbase also contributes to expanding blade reach in combination with large articulation angle. Additionally the minimum turning radius still short with wide steering angle, serves high maneuverability.

Lock-up torque converter transmission

The lock-up torque converter transmission is specially designed for Komatsu graders. This provides both efficiency of direct shifting and operability of automatic shifting.

1) Transmission mode selection

Auto mode

Drive with Torque Converter in all shift position. This mode provides high controllability and torque multiplication. Additionally Lock-up will works in F5-F8 and R3-R4 position. For example shifting F8 position serves automatic shifting through F4-F8 in responsible to machine speed.

Manual mode

Works like a same way as conventional power shift, by engaging lock-up clutch with all gears as the engine speed increases. This mode provides both ease of operation of torque converter and maximum efficiency over mid engine speed range. In reverse traveling, works same way as Auto mode, serves less operation frequency.

		Shift lever position							Shif	t leve	r posi	tion
	F1	F2	F3	F4	F5	F6	F7	F8	R1	R2	R3	R4
Auto mode	0	0	0	→		otomatic hifting	0	© •	0	/ 10	otomatic hifting	© →
Manual mode	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	O ■ Au S	© tomatic hifting	© •

O: In torque converter state
O: As the machine speed increases, torque converter state changes to lockup state



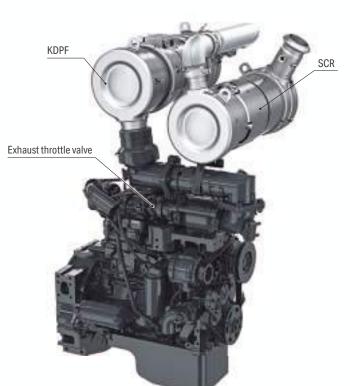
Ecology & Economy Features

Komatsu's new emission regulationscompliant engine New

The Komatsu CEV Stage-V engine is productive, dependable and efficient. With ultra-low emissions, it provides a lower environmental impact and a superior performance to help reduce operating costs and lets the operator work in complete peace of mind.

Heavy-duty aftertreatment

This new system combines a Komatsu Diesel Particulate Filter (KDPF) and Selective Catalytic Reduction (SCR). The SCR NOx reduction system injects the correct amount of Diesel Exhaust Fluid (DEF) at the proper rate, thereby decomposing NOx into non-toxic water (H_2O) and nitrogen gas (N_2).





Electronic control system

The electronic control system performs highspeed processing of all signals from sensors installed on the machine and engine to ensure total control of equipment in all applications. Conditions of the engine are displayed on the monitor inside the cab, providing necessary information to the operator. Furthermore, managing the information via KOMTRAX helps customers track required maintenance.

High-Pressure Common Rail (HPCR)

The system is designed to achieve an optimal injection of fuel to reduce Particulate Matter (PM) emissions. The system operates at higher pressure, thereby reducing both PM emissions and fuel consumption across all engine operating conditions.

Exhaust throttle valve

Exhaust throttle valve controls the exhaust temperature and optimizes the functions of KDPF and SCR assembly by throttling the exhaust passage.



Electric throttle control

Throttle is electronically controlled and the operator can set the optimal engine RPM at hand.

Engine power mode selection system

The system allows the operator to select from the two modes, <P mode> or <E mode>, according to the working conditions. The selector switch which is on the console is easy to access.

• P mode

Maximize production by taking full advantage of engine output. Appropriate for job sites which emphasize productivity.

• E mode

Suited for carrying out lighter work economically. This feature provides the sufficient power, better fuel consumption, and prevents tire slipping to extend tire life.



1 RPM set switch

2 Power mode selector switch

GD535-6 GD535-6

Operator Environment Features

Excellent visibility

Excellent visibility of hexangular floor and rear layout side pillar boosts operator's confidence and productivity in all grader applications. Well-positioned blade linkage provides an unobstructed view of the moldboard and front tires.



Rear view



ROPS/FOPS structure

Low profile canopy are designed to ensure ROPS/FOPS (ISO 3471/ISO 3449) certification.



Adjustable control console

The control console moves back and forth and the operator easily gets in and out of the operator compartment. The steering wheel also tilts to suit the operator's preference.



Low noise

New hydraulically driven fan and redesigned layout of the cooling system achieve a low noise level. Circumference dynamic noise level (ISO 6395)

107 dB (A)

(Typical test data at Komatsu test center)

Engine shutdown secondary switch New

The engine stop switch is incorporated to allow shutdown of the machine when accessing the key switch is not possible.



Seat belt caution indicator New

A warning indicator on the monitor appears when the seat belt is not fastened.



Suspension seat New

High-rigidity suspension seat optimizes damper hardness and various seat adjustments for enhanced vibration absorption.



Work equipment lock lever New

A lever lock is equipped as standard for improved safety during maintenance. It is easy to use and the locked/unlocked status can be seen at a glance.



Maintenance Features

Ground refueling

Easily refueling from the ground eliminates the need for climbing on and down from the tandem.



Service access platform

The punched metal foot plates on the tandem and grab rails ensure safety maintenance and inspection.





Fuel filter and fuel pre-filter with water separator

Provides the large filter with enhanced filtering performance, surely removes water and dirt in fuel to prevent fuel system troubles.



Fuel pre-filter

Easy access to service points

Wide-open engine hood doors improve accessibility to service points. All major service points are accessible from the ground level.



Easy access DEF tank New

Located at the right rear side of radiator grill, for easy to access. A convenient sight gauge is provided.



Battery disconnect switch New

For inspection and maintenance, the batteries can be disconnected with this switch when repairing the machine or checking batteries.





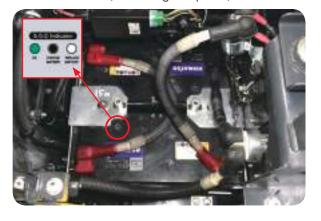


GD535-6 GD535-6

Maintenance Features

Maintenance-free battery New

Maintenance-free battery saves maintenance time. Operator needs only to check the indicator to know the status. (OK/Charge/Replace)



Hydraulic-driven fan New

Hydraulic-driven fan cools down radiator, charge air cooler (CAC), and hydraulic oil cooler. Fan reverse mode blows dust and dirt away, for easier radiator cleaning. It can be operated on the monitor display easily.





Fan reverse rotation indicator

Easy sampling New

Added sampling port for oil and coolant on machine, so you can sample very easily.



"Maintenance time caution lamp" display

When the remaining time before maintenance becomes less than 30 hours*, the maintenance time monitor appears. Pressing the key switches on the monitor to change to the maintenance screen.

* The setting can be changed within the range between 10 and





Aftertreatment devices regeneration automatic display

When it is necessary to carry out manual regeneration (the manual stationary regeneration) of the KDPF, the display automatically switches to the aftertreatment device regeneration screen to inform the operator.





Supports the DEF level and refill timing

The DEF level gauge is displayed continuously on the right side of the monitor screen. In addition, when the refill timing* is reached, the DEF low level guidance appears as a pops up display to inform the operator in real time.

* The CEV Stage-IV emission regulation covering specific special automobile exhaust gases stipulates that when the DEF level becomes very low, the engine output is limited by law.







Reliability Features

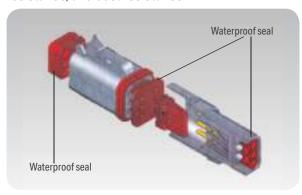
Slip clutch circle drive

Protects the work equipment from shock load when the blade hits an obstruction.



Sealed connectors

Wiring harnesses and controller are connected by sealed connectors providing high reliability, water resistance, and dust resistance.



Battery location

The battery bay is elevated from the ground and prevents intrusion of dusts into the battery and power supply circuit.

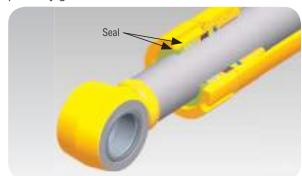
Hydraulically controlled wet multipledisc brake

This brake system is completely sealed and adjustment-free. The large braking surface provides dependable braking capability and extends life before an overhaul.



Double seal cylinder (Blade side shift cylinder)

A double-seal design is used for the blade side shift cylinder, which is installed near the ground and possibly gets dirt.





Attachments

Moldboard

Includes replaceable metal wear inserts, cutting edge and end bits.

Cutting edge and end bits are hardened.



Scarifier

Digs up hard material cannot be removed by the

This scarifier can accommodate up to 9 teeth.





Information and Communication Technology (ICT)



Visual user menu

The menus are grouped according to each function with easily understandable icons which enable the operator to reach the information intuitively.





- ECO Guidance
- Machine Setting and Info Reverse Mode
- 3 Aftertreatment Regen
- SCR Information
- Monitor Setting

High resolution 3.5-inch Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) color monitor

The high resolution 3.5-inch color LCD monitor improves its visibility. The function switches are simple and easy to operate. The operator easily accesses various user menus like maintenance information, and operation record, also adjusts the machine settings.

Indicator, switches

- 1 LCD unit
- Warning lamp
- 3 Pilot lamp
- 4 Pilot display5 Engine coolant temperature
- gauge
 6 Torque converter oil temperature
- forque converter oil temperature gauge
 Service meter / Odometer / Clock /
- Fuel consumption gauge display

 Speedometer
- 9 Tachometer
- 40 Articulation indicator
- Shift indicatorFuel gauge
- Gear shift lever position
- display
- 4 Function switches
- Seat belt caution lamp
- 6 DEF gauge
- 17 ECO gauge

Operation record and fuel consumption history

The ECO guidance menu enables the operator to check the operation record and fuel consumption history by pushing the button.

The records can be used to reduce the overall fuel consumption.





Maintenance history

The monitor system can record the maintenance history such as changing the engine oil.



KOMTRAX

The Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data about your equipment and fleet in user-friendly format.

Energy saving operation report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-saving operation report based on the operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you efficiently run a business.



Energy saving operation report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-saving operation report based on the operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you efficiently run a business.



The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

Optimal strategy for efficient work

The detailed information that KOMTRAX puts at your fingertips helps you manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make better daily and long-term strategic decisions.





Support





Komatsu total support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation cost when you need it, Komatsu Distributor is ready to provide a variety of supports before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

Komatsu Distributor can study the customer's job site and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet all of your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or replace the existing ones from Komatsu.

Product support

Komatsu Distributor gives the proactive support and secures the quality of the machinery that will be delivered.

Parts availability

Komatsu Distributor is available for emergency inquiry by the customers for genuine, quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Technical support

Komatsu product support service (Technical support) is designed to help customer. Komatsu Distributor offers a variety of effective services to show how much Komatsu is dedicated to the maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program

Repair & maintenance service

Komatsu Distributor offers quality repair and maintenance service to the customer, utilizing and promoting Komatsu developed programs.

Komatsu Reman (Remanufactured) components

Komatsu Reman products are the result of the implementation of the Komatsu global policy which establishes and agrees to reduce the owning, operating and total Life Cycle Costs (LCC) to Komatsu's customer through high quality, prompt delivery and competitively priced in own remanufactured products (QDC).



Specifications

	a		

Liigiiie	
Model	Komatsu SAA4D107E-5
Туре	Water-cooled, 4-cycle, direct injection
Aspiration	Turbocharged and air to air aftercooled
No. of cylinders	4
Bore	107 mm
Stroke	124 mm
Piston displacement	4.46 L
Engine power (Manual mode)	
SAE J1995	Gross 110 kW 148 HP/2000 min ⁻¹
ISO 9249 (net engine power)	Net 107 kW 144 HP/2000 min ⁻¹
Maximum torque	640 Nm 65.3 kgf·m/1500 min ⁻¹
Torque rise	22%
Fan speed	Max 1300 min ⁻¹
Air cleaner	2-stage, dry-type
India CEV Stage-V emissions certified.	

Transmission and torque converter

sion with torque converter and g)	d lock-up.
Forward	Reverse
4.3 km/h	4.8 km/h
6.1 km/h	9.4 km/h
8.2 km/h	18.3 km/h
11.6 km/h	34.9 km/h
16.1 km/h	-
22.5 km/h	-
30.9 km/h	-
43.0 km/h	_
	Forward 4.3 km/h 6.1 km/h 8.2 km/h 11.6 km/h 16.1 km/h 22.5 km/h 30.9 km/h

Travel speeds calculated with 14.00-24-16PR tires.

Tandem drive

Oscillating welded box section	490 mm x 202 mm
Side wall thickness: Inner	22 mm
Outer	19 mm
Wheel axle spacing	1525 mm
Tandem oscillation	11° forward, 13° reverse

Front axle

Туре	Solid bar construction welded steel sections
Ground clearance at pivot	600 mm
Wheel lean angle, right or left	16°
Oscillation, total	32°

Rear axle

Alloy steel, heat treated, full floating axle.

Steering

Hydraulic power steering providing stopped engine steering meeting ISO 5010.				
Minimum turning radius	7.0 m			
Maximum steering range, right or left	49°			
Articulation	25°			

Brakes

Service brake	Foot operated, wet multiple-disc brakes, hydraulically actuated on four tandem wheels.
Parking brake	Manually actuated, spring applied, hydraulically released caliper disc type.

Frame

Front Frame Structure	
Height	300 mm
Width	280 mm
Side	22 mm
Upper, Lower	28 mm

Drawbar

A-shaped, welded construction for maximum strength drawbar ball.	with a replaceable
Drawbar frame	220 mm x 16 mm

Circle

Single piece rolled ring forging. Four circle support shoe wear plates.	s with replaceable
Diameter (outside)	1410 mr
Circle reversing control hydraulic rotation	360

GD535-6

Specifications

Moldboard

Hydraulic power shift fabricated from steel. Includes replaceable metal wear inserts, cutting edge and end bits.
Cutting edge and end bits are hardened.

Dimensions	$3710 \text{ mm} \times 645 \text{ mm} \times 16 \text{ mm}$
Arc radius	329 mm
Cutting edge	152 mm x16 mm
Replaceable/Reversible side edges	229 mm x 496 mm x 13 mm
Blade pull	8560 kgf
Blade down pressure	6905 kgf

Blade range

Moldboard side shift:	
Right	625 mm
Left	625 mm
Maximum shoulder reach outside rear tires (frame	straight)
Right	1975 mm
Left	1905 mm
Maximum lift above ground	500 mm
Maximum cutting depth	545 mm
Maximum blade angle, right or left	90°
Blade tip angle	40° forward, 3° backward

Hydraulics

Hydraulic pumps:

Gear pump for work equipment steering control Capacity (at engine rated rpm)
77 L/min

Relief valve setting:	
Work equipment	19.1 MPa 195 kgf/cm ²
Steering	17.7 MPa 180 kgf/cm ²

Instrument

Electric monitoring syste	em with diagnost	tics:		
Gauges:				
- · · · ·			 	 Π

Standard

articulation, engine coolant temperature, fuel level, speedometer, transmission shift indicator, engine tachometer, torque converter oil temperature, DEF level

Warning lights/Indicator:

Standard

battery charge, brake oil pressure, inching temperature, directional indicator, engine oil pressure, hydraulic oil temperature, heater signal, lift arm lock, parking brake, torque converter oil temperature, eco, P mode, rpm set, high beam, working lights, seat belt

Capacities (refilling)

Fuel tank	224 L
DEF tank	36 L
Cooling system	21.6 L
Crank case	14.2 L
Transmission	45 L
Final drive	13 L
Tandem housing (each)	51 L
Hydraulic system	51.5 L
Circle reverse housing	4.1 L

Operating weight (approximate)

Includes lubricants, coolant, full fuel tank, ROPS/FOPS canopy, 14.00-24 tires and multi piece rims, scarifier:

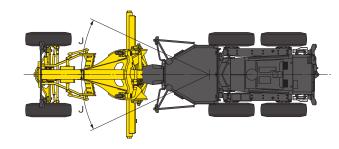
Total	15040 kg
On front wheels	4340 kg
On rear wheels	10700 kg

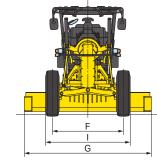
Scarifier (optional)

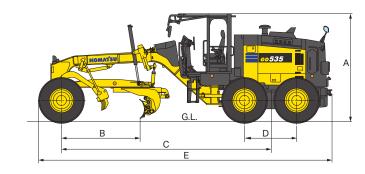
Middle, V-type	
Working width	1065mm
Scarifying depth, maximum	180 mm
Scarifier shank holders	9
Scarifier shank holders spacing	130 mm

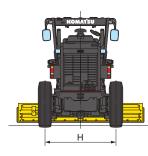
Machine dimensions

A Height 3165 mm B Cutting edge to center of front axle 2265 mm C Wheelbase to center of tandem 6100 mm D Tandem wheelbase 1525 mm E Overall length 8565 mm F Tread (front) 2070 mm G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm J Articulation, left or right 25°			
C Wheelbase to center of tandem 6100 mm D Tandem wheelbase 1525 mm E Overall length 8565 mm F Tread (front) 2070 mm G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	Α	Height	3165 mm
D Tandem wheelbase 1525 mm E Overall length 8565 mm F Tread (front) 2070 mm G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	В	Cutting edge to center of front axle	2265 mm
E Overall length 8565 mm F Tread (front) 2070 mm G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	С	Wheelbase to center of tandem	6100 mm
F Tread (front) 2070 mm G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	D	Tandem wheelbase	1525 mm
G Width of standard moldboard 3710 mm H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	Е	Overall length	8565 mm
H Tread (rear) 2060 mm I Width over tires 2455 mm	F	Tread (front)	2070 mm
I Width over tires 2455 mm	G	Width of standard moldboard	3710 mm
	Н	Tread (rear)	2060 mm
J Articulation, left or right 25°	1	Width over tires	2455 mm
	J	Articulation, left or right	25°









Wheels, front and rear

Tire	Rim size	Wheel group
14.00-24	10"	Multi-piece

MEMO

Standard and optional equipment

Engine and related items

Air intake extension	•
Double element air cleaner and dust indicator	•
Engine: Komatsu SAA4D107E-5, India CEV Stage-V emission, turbocharged and air-to-air aftercooled, 144 HP net horsepower	•
Fuel pre-filter	•
Secondary engine stop switch	•

Electrical system

Alarm, back-up	•
Alternator, 24V/60A	•
Alternator, 24V/85A	0
Battery, 2 x 12V/88Ah	•
Horn, electric	•
Indicators: parking brake, turn signal, lighting, high beam, brake oil pressure, seat belt caution	•
KOMTRAX	•
Lights: back-up, stop, tail, directional, headlights (2 halogen type, front bar mounted), parking	•
Multi color monitor	•

Operator environment

Console, adjustable with instrument panel monitoring system	•
Floor mat	•
Mirrors: right and left exterior	•
Suspension adjustable seat, vinyl with seat belt	•

Power train

Axle, rear full floating, planetary type	•
Brake, parking, spring applied, hydraulic release, caliper disc type	•
Dual mode transmission (F8-R4) power shift, direct drive and torque converter with auto shift	•
Service brakes, full hydraulic wet disc	•

Work equipment and hydraulics 9 section hydraulic control valve

3 Section Hydraune control valve	
Circle, drawbar mounted, 360° rotation hydraulic blade lift and circle side shift	•
Circle slip clutch	•
Moldboard: 3710 mm x 645 mm x 16 mm with replaceable end bits, through hardened cutting edges 152 mm x 16 mm, hydraulic blade side shift	•
Moldhoard: 3710 mm x 645 mm x 22 mm with replaceable end hits	

Steering, full hydraulic with leaning front axle and frame articulation

through hardened cutting edges 152 mm x 16 mm, hydraulic blade O

Other equipment	
Fuel tank, ground level refueling	•
Painting, Komatsu standard color scheme	•
Steps and handrails, rear, right and left side	•
Vandalism protection includes lockable access to fuel tank, battery cover and engine side covers	•
Work lamps: front (2), rear (2)	•
Front weight	0
License-plate light	•
Scarifier	0
Hydraulic blade tip	•
Steering cylinder guard	0
Transmission under guard	•
Battery disconnect switch	•
Tool box with lock	•
General toolkit	0

Further equipment on request

standard equipment O optional equipment

23

This specification sheet may contain attachments and optional equipment that are not available in your area. Please consult your local Komatsu distributor for those

Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice.

KOMATSU®

WA320-6





WALK-AROUND







WA320-6

HORSEPOWER Gross: 127 kW 171 HP / 2000 min⁻¹ Net: 125 kW 167 HP / 2000 min⁻¹

OPERATING WEIGHT	13705 – 14440 kg
BUCKET CAPACITY	2.1 – 3.2 m ³

HIGH PRODUCTIVITY & LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION

Faster Travel & Lower Fuel Consumption

Highly Efficient Hydrostatic Transmission (HST)

Electronically-controlled HST with Variable Shift Control System

Useful Functions Given by HST

Variable Traction Control System

Maximum Dumping Clearance and Reach

INCREASED RELIABILITY

Komatsu Components

High-rigidity Frames and Loader Linkage

Wet Multiple-disc Brakes and Fully Hydraulic Braking System

EXCELLENT OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

Pillar-less Large Cab

Great Rear Visibility

Best Position for Comfort

Easy-to-operate Loader Control Mono-lever

EASY MAINTENANCE

Maintenance Accessibility

Protective Guards

Equipment Management Monitoring System

Easy Radiator Cleaning

SAFETY

ROPS/FOPS Cab (ISO 3471/ISO 3449)

Rear-hinged Full Open Cab Door

KOMTRAX

KOMTRAX

HIGH PRODUCTIVITY & LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION



Faster Travel & Lower Fuel Consumption

High performance SAA6D107E-1 engine

Electronic heavy duty common rail fuel injection system provides optimum combustion of fuel. This system also provides fast throttle response to match the machine's powerful tractive effort and fast hydraulic response.

Net: 125 kW 167 HP

Low emission engine

This engine is U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions certified, without sacrificing power or machine productivity.

Low fuel consumption

The high-torque engine and HST with maximum efficiency in the low-speed range provide low fuel consumption.



ECO indicator

The ECO indicator will inform the operator when the machine is maximizing fuel efficiency.



ECO indicator

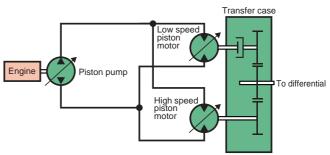
Highly Efficient HST

Electronically-controlled HST with a variable pump and 2-motor system

Komatsu HST system allow a highly efficient and powerful operation. Increasing pump capacity and variable input torque control of new electronically controlled HST pump enable the engine to run at the best speed range and reduce fuel consumption.

The efficiency of HST motors

HST provides quick travel response and aggressive drive into the pile. The variable displacement system automatically adjusts to the tractive effort demand to provide maximum power and efficiency. When high drive torque is needed, both motors are engaged to provide highest torque. Maximum rim pull can provided from zero travel speed. This combination makes the loader very aggressive and quick at digging, climbing or initiating movement. When high travel speed is needed, clutch cuts off the low speed motor to eliminate drag and achieve excellent fuel efficiency.



Electronically-controlled HST with Variable Shift Control System

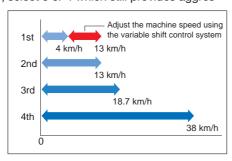
Full auto-shifting

Full auto shifting eliminates any gear shifting and kick-down operation to allow the operator to concentrate on digging and loading.

Variable shift control system

The variable shift control system allows setting the top speed for increased safety and precision. The operator can choose between first, second, third or fourth maximum speeds by dialing the speed range selector switch. For v-cycles, the operator can set the speed control switch to 1 or 2, which provides aggressive digging, quick response and fast hydraulics. For load and carry, select 3 or 4 which still provides aggres-

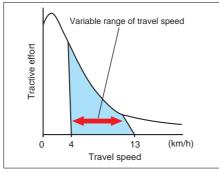
sive digging but with much faster travel speed.



Variable and fine travel speed control

When the variable shift control switch is in 1st speed, ground speed can be adjusted between 4 km/h and 13 km/h with the fine control. This allows constant low driving speeds that are perfectly adjusted to applications such as lawn mowing or milling jobs.





2 Variable shift control switch

Useful Functions Given by HST

Self braking effect of the HST drive lines

The self braking effect of the HST drive line slows down the machine when the accelerator pedal is released. It can hold the loader in position on workable slopes, and it will be an advantage in stockpiling or ramp loading. Also it prevents uncontrolled rolling. Safety is greatly improved especially when working in confined spaces or inside industrial buildings. In addition, brake wear is practically eliminated.

Improved inching performance

Electronically controlled HST brake provides improved inching performance of the machine and demonstrates ideal braking control when the machine is travelling and working.

Accelerator pedal sensitive intelligent HST control

Finely-tuned HST control according to the accelerator pedal angle achieves variable clutch timing by machine speed and motor shift control in quick acceleration. It reduces shocks and allows smoother traveling and better energy-saving operation.



Overrun prevention system

Overrun prevention system will secure safety in downhill and protect the power train and brake components from overload. When the travel speed reaches 40 km/h, the caution lamp informs the operator to reduce the speed. When the machine descends a moderate slope (6 degrees or less), maximum travel speed is automatically limited to 42 km/h.

Notes: When the machine descends a steep slope, it is necessary to use the service brake to reduce the speed for safety.

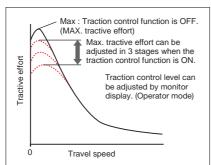


Variable Traction Control System

The variable traction control system optimizes the digging traction automatically depending on working condition by controlling HST pump, motor and engine. Combined with the function of torque proportioning differentials, or optional limited slip differential this system exerts the following effects.

- Facilitates operation on soft ground where the tires of the machine are apt to slip.
- Eliminates excessive bucket penetration and reduces tire slippage during stockpile loading to improve the work efficiency.
- Reduces tire slippage to extend the life of tires. Furthermore, the maximum tractive effort can be adjusted in five

stages while the traction control switch is ON. This allows the operator to select the optimum tractive effort for diversified road conditions.

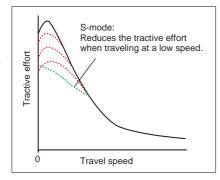




S-mode

Setting the switch to S-mode allows the machine to get the optimum driving force for operations on slippery road surfaces, like snow-removal on snow surface, resulting in reduced tire slippage and facilitation of the operation. Unexpected tire slippage on slippery road surface is suppressed by controlling

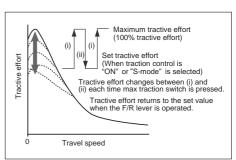
the engine speed and HST motor when traveling at a low speed. (S-mode is effective only in forward traveling.)

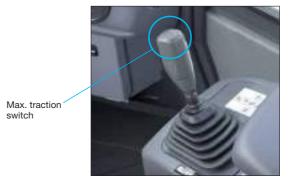


Max. traction switch

Max. traction switch is located on the work equipment control lever. When traction control switch is at ON position or S-mode is selected, pushing this switch cancels the setting of the traction control temporarily and increases the tractive effort to its 100% value. Then pushing the max. traction switch again or operating the F/R lever returns the tractive effort to

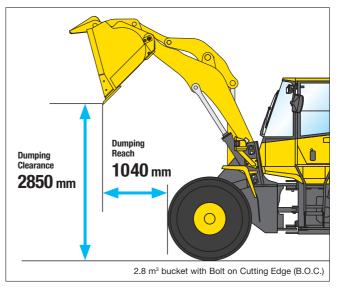
the set value automatically. This switch is useful for operations such as piling up work where large tractive effort is required temporarily.



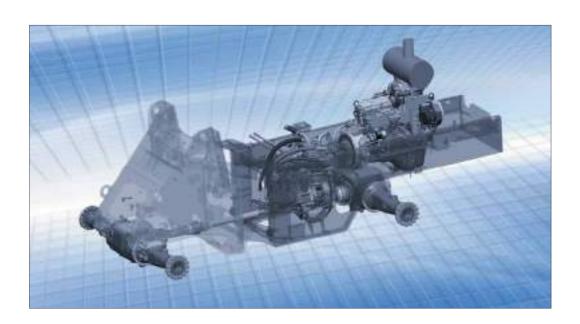


Maximum Dumping Clearance and Reach

The long lift arms provide high dumping clearances and maximum dumping reach. The operator can even level loads on the body of a dump truck easily and efficiently.



INCREASED RELIABILITY



Komatsu Components

Komatsu manufactures the engine, transfer case and hydraulic components on this wheel loader. Komatsu loaders are manufactured with an integrated production system under a strict quality control system.

Front axle

Transfer

Rear axle

High-rigidity Frames and Loader Linkage

The front and rear frames and the loader linkage have got more torsional rigidity to provide resistance increased to stresses. Frame and loader linkage are designed to accommodate actual working loads, and simulated computer testing proves its strength.

Sealed Connectors

Main harnesses and controller connectors are equipped with sealed connectors providing high reliability, water resistance and dust resistance.



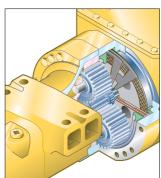
Wet Multiple-disc Brakes and Fully Hydraulic Braking System

This system result in lower maintenance costs and higher reliability. Wet multiple-disc brakes are fully sealed. Contaminantsare kept out, reducing wear and resulting maintenance. Brakes require no adjustments for wear, meaning even lower maintenance. The parking brake is also an adjustment-free, wet multiple-disc for high reliability and long life.

Added reliability is designed into the braking system by the use of two independent hydraulic circuits. Provides hydraulic backup should one of the circuits fail.

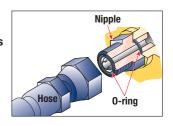
Fully hydraulic brakes mean no air system to bleed, or the condensation of water in the system that can lead to contamination, corrosion, and freezing.



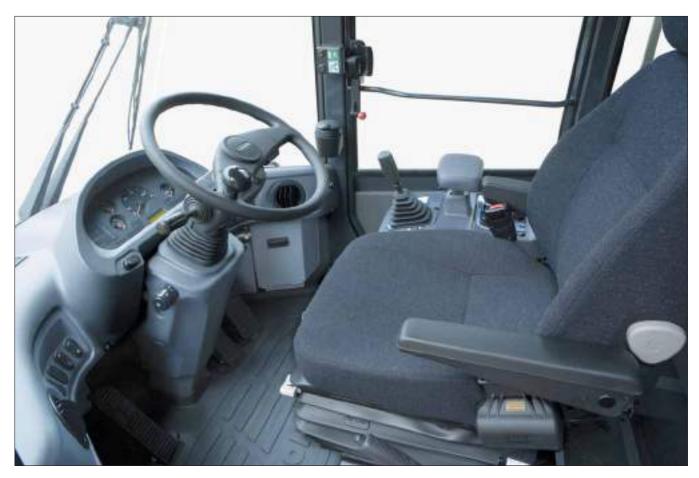


Reliable Hydraulic Line

Flat face-to-face O-ring seals Flat face-to-face O-ring seals are used to securely seal hydraulic hose connections and to prevent oil leakage.



EXCELLENT OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT



The large space cab offers exceptional driver's comfort - comparable to a passenger car. The large, frameless window gives an unobstructed view of the bucket and tires while the slanted rear end ensures a clear view to the rear. The low-noise designed cab with the air-cushioned seat and the fully adjustable console inside allow the operator to work comfortably and productively over long period.

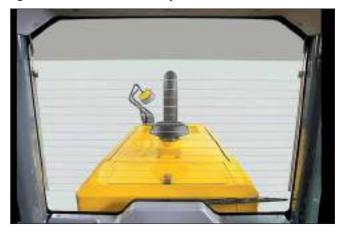
Pillar-less Large Cab

A wide pillar-less flat glass provides excellent front visibility. The wiper arm covers a large area to provide great visibility even on rainy days. The large cab area providing maximum space for the operator. The front mounted air conditioner (A/C) was introduced to increase seat reclining and backward slide adjustment.



Great Rear Visibility

Center lined muffler and air intake piping provides great rear right and left hand side visibility.



Best Position for Comfort

Tiltable steering column

The operator can tilt the steering column to provide a comfortable working position.



Adjustable wrist rest

The height of wrist rest is adjustable. It allows operators to adjust the controls to a comfortable position.



Low-noise Design

The large cab is mounted with Komatsu's unique ROPS/ FOPS (ISO 3471/ISO 3449) viscous mounts. The low-noise engine, hydraulically driven fan, and hydraulic pumps are

mounted with rubber cushions, and the cab sealing is improved to provide a quiet, low-vibration, dustproof with pressurizing, and comfortable operating environment.

Operator's ear noise level: 70 dB(A) Dynamic noise level (Outside): 107 dB(A)

Electronically Controlled Directional Lever

The operator can change direction with a touch of his fingers without removing his hand from the steering wheel. Solid

state electronics makes this possible.



Easy-to-operate Loader Control Mono-lever

The new mono-lever using Proportional Pressure Control (PPC) allows the operator to easily operate the work equipment, to reduce operator fatigue and to increase controllability. The adjustable wrist rest provides the operator with a variety of comfortable operating positions.

Right-side Control Panel

The operator can easily select the speed range, maximum travel speed in 1st, tractive effort.



- Loader control mono-lever
- 2 Speed range selector switch
- Variable shift control switch
- 4 Traction control switch
- 5 Max. traction switch
- 6 Fan reverse switch

Options

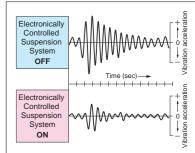
12 V outlet

In addition to 24 V cigarette lighter, 12 V outlet is provided in the cab.

Electronically Controlled Suspension System

Electronically Controlled Suspension System uses an accumulator which absorbs some of the shock in the boom arm, giving the operator a much smoother ride. This reduces operator fatigue and reduces material spillage during load and carry operations. Electronically Controlled Suspension Sys-

tem operation is speed sensitive and turned off automatically below 5 km/h speed, meaning that the boom won't move during stationary digging.



^{*} Image is for illustration purpose

EASY MAINTENANCE



Maintenance Accessibility

Designed to save time

With long service intervals and best-in-class accessibility, the WA320-6 reduces the time and money you need to suspend on maintenance. A gas spring helps the operator open and close each gull-wing side door for easy daily servicing. The doors open in two steps and be able to use upper or lower stop position as the situation demands.

Simple and convenient access to service

The service doors are designed as gull-wing doors. They allow you convenient and safe access to the daily service points from the ground.



Protective Guards

Thermal safety guards

Thermal guards for high temperature exhaust manifold are installed.



Rotating safety guards

Protective guards for rotating parts of the alternator and the air conditioner compressor are installed.



Equipment Management Monitoring System

Komatsu's new main monitor keeps the operator informed of all machine functions at a glance. The monitor is located behind the steering wheel and displays different machine functions including fluid/filter change intervals and troubleshooting memory display functions. The main gauges are analog type for easy viewing and other functions utilize lighted symbols or Liquid Crystal Display (LCD) readouts.

Maintenance control and troubleshooting functions

- Action code display function: If an abnormality occurs, the monitor displays action details on the character display at the bottom center of the monitor.
- Monitor function: Controller monitors engine oil level, pressure, coolant temperature, air cleaner clogging, etc. If controller finds abnormalities, the error is displayed on LCD.
- Replacement time notice function: Monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on LCD when replacement intervals are reached.
- Trouble data memory function: Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.



- 1 Engine coolant temperature
- 2 Speedometer
- 3 Fuel gauge
- 4 HST oil temperature gauge
- 6 Character display
- 6 Inspection and maintenance items pilot lamp

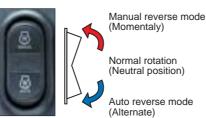
Easy Radiator Cleaning

Hydraulic driven fan with reverse rotation If the machine is operating in adverse

conditions, the operator can reverse the hydraulic cooling fan from inside the cab by pressing a switch on the control panel.









Hydraulic driven fan

Automatic reversible fan (Optional)

The engine fan is driven hydraulically and can be operated in reverse automatically. When the switch is in the automatic position, the fan revolves in reverse for 2 minutes every 2 hours intermittently (Default setting).

Side-by-side cooling unit

The cooling system is isolated from the engine by a bulkhead to provide more efficient cooling and low noise. The radiator, air-to-air cooler and oil cooler are mounted side-by-side for more efficient cooling and easy cleaning. A fully-opening, gas spring assisted rear grille gives the operator excellent access to the swing-out fan and coolers.



Swing-out fan

Side-by-side cooling unit



ROPS/FOPS Cab

The ROPS/FOPS cab is standard for operator's safety.

A wide pillar-less flat glass provides excellent front visibility, and a heated rear window provides excellent rear visibility in cold and freezing weather conditions.



ROPS (ISO 3471): Roll-over Protective Structure FOPS (ISO 3449): Falling Objects Protective Structure

Rear-hinged Full Open Cab Door

The cab door hinges are installed to the rear side of the cab providing a large opening angle for the operator to enter and exit. The steps are designed like a staircase, so that the operator can get on and off the cab easily.



Alternate Exit of Cab

The door on the right side of the cab is provided as an alternate exit for use when the operator cannot get out through the door on the left side.

Other Safety Features

Two independent lines brake system

Added reliability is designed into the braking system by the use of two independent hydraulic circuits, providing hydraulic backup should one of the circuits fail.

Secondary steering (Optional)

If the steering pump is disabled, a secondary steering pump provides hydraulic flow.

Battery disconnect switch (Optional)

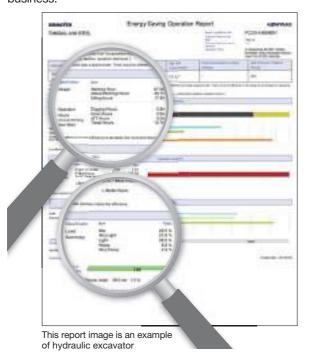
The battery disconnect switch is located in the right side battery box. This can be used to disconnect power when performing service work on the machine.



The Komatsu remote monitoring and management technology provides insightful data about your equipment and fleet in user-friendly format.

Energy Saving Operation Report

KOMTRAX delivers the energy-saving operation report based on the operating information such as fuel consumption, load summary and idling time, which helps you efficiently run a business.



Equipment Management Support

Through the web application, a variety of search parameters are available to quickly find information about specific machines based on key factors. Moreover, KOMTRAX finds out machines with problems from your fleet and shows you through an optimal interface.



Periodic maintenance

The report contents and data depend on the machine model.

Optimal Strategy for Efficient Work

The detailed information that KOMTRAX puts at your fingertips helps you manage your fleet conveniently on the web anytime, anywhere. It gives you the power to make better daily and

long-term strategic decisions.





SPECIFICATIONS



FNGINE

Model Komatsu SAA6D107E-1 Type Water-cooled, 4-cycle Aspiration Turbocharged, aftercooled Number of cylinders .6 Bore x stroke 107 mm x 124 mm Piston displacement .6.69 L Governor All-speed, electronic
Horsepower
SAE J1995
Fan drive method for radiator cooling
Fuel systemDirect injection
Lubrication system:
Method Gear pump, force-lubrication Filter Full-flow type Air cleaner Dry type with double elements and
dust evacuator, plus dust indicator
* Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 117 kW

^{*} Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 117 kW 156 HP.

U.S. EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions certified.



TRANSMISSION

Transmission:

Type Hydrostatic, 1 pump, 2 motors with speed range select Travel speed:

Measured with 20.5-25 tires

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th
Both Forward and	4.0 - 13.0	13.0	18.7	38.0
Reverse	km/h	km/h	km/h	km/h



AXLES AND FINAL DRIVES

Drive system	Four-wheel drive
Front	Fixed, semi-floating
Rear	.Center-pin support, semi-floating,
	24° total oscillation
Reduction gear	Spiral bevel gear
Differential gear	Torque proportioning
Final reduction gear	Planetary gear, single reduction



Service brakes Hydraulically actuated,
wet multiple-disc brakes actuate on four wheels
Parking brake Wet, multiple-disc brake on transfer output shaft
Secondary brake Parking brake is commonly used



STEERING SYSTEM

Type	. Full-hydraulic power steering
Steering angle	5° each direction (40° end stop)
Minimum turning radius at the center	r of outside tire 5380 mm



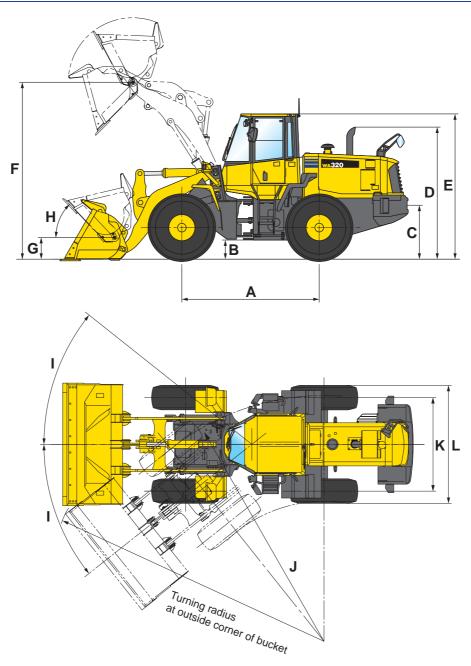
HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Steerin	g system:	
Hydr	aulic pump	Gear type pump
Capa	city	. 172 L/min at rated rpm
Relie	f valve setting	20.6 MPa 210 kgf/cm ²
Hydr	aulic cylinders:	
Тур	e	ouble-acting, piston type
Nur	nber of cylinders	2
Bor	e x stroke	70 mm x 453 mm
Loac	er control:	
Hyd	Iraulic pump	Gear type pump
Cap	pacity	61 L/min
Rel	ef valve setting	20.6 MPa 210 kgf/cm ²
Hydr	aulic cylinders:	
Ту	pe	ouble-acting, piston type
N	ımber of cylinders-bore x stroke:	
L	ift cylinder	2- 140 mm x 740 mm
E	Bucket cylinder	1- 160 mm x 532 mm
Cont	rol valve	2-spool type
Cont	rol positions:	
	om Rai	, , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , , ,
	ket	
	aulic cycle time (Rated load in bucke	
	se	
	0	
Lowe	er (Empty)	3.3 s



SERVICE REFILL CAPACITIES

Cooling system	-
Fuel tank	
Engine	
Hydraulic system	
Axle (Each front and rear)	
Torque converter and transmission	



Measured with 20.5-25-12PR (L-3) tires

		Standard Boom	High Lift Boom
Α	Wheelbase	Vheelbase 3030 mm	
В	Ground clearance	425 mm	
C	Hitch height	109	5 mm
D	Overall height, top of stack	291	5 mm
E	Overall height, top of ROPS cab	320	0 mm
F	Hinge pin height, max. height	3905 mm	4545 mm
G	Hinge pin height, carry position	480 mm	645 mm
Н	Max. tilt back angle, carry position	47°	50°
- 1	Steering angle, each direction	38	.5°
J	Turning radius, center of outside tire	5380 mm	
K	Tread	2050 mm 2590 mm	
L	Width over tires		



Measured with 20.5-25-12PR (L-3) tires

		Standard Boom					
		Stockpile Bucket Excavating Bucket		Light Material Bucket			
		B.O.C.*2	Teeth	B.O.C.*2	Teeth	B.O.C.*2	Teeth
Bucket Capacity:	Heaped	2.8 m ³	2.6 m ³	2.3 m ³	2.1 m ³	3.2 m ³	3.0 m ³
	Struck	2.4 m³	2.2 m³	2.0 m ³	1.8 m³	2.8 m³	2.6 m ³
Bucket Width		2740 mm	2760 mm	2740 mm	2760 mm	2685 mm	2705 mm
Bucket Weight		1235 kg	1130 kg	1195 kg	1090 kg	1420 kg	1315 kg
Dumping Clearance, Ma	ax. Height and 45° Dump Angle*1	2850 mm	2740 mm	2955 mm	2845 mm	2715 mm	2605 mm
Reach at Max. Height a	nd 45° Dump Angle*1	1040 mm	1125 mm	935 mm	1020 mm	1175 mm	1260 mm
Reach at 2130 mm Cle	arance and 45° Dump Angle	1580 mm	1615 mm	1530 mm	1565 mm	1640 mm	1665 mm
Reach with Arm Horizo	ntal and Bucket Level	2420 mm	2565 mm	2275 mm	2415 mm	2615 mm	2755 mm
Operating Height (Fully	Raised)	5325 mm	5325 mm	5135 mm	5165 mm	5405 mm	5500 mm
Overall Length		7515 mm	7660 mm	7370 mm	7515 mm	7705 mm	7850 mm
Loader Clearance Circl (Bucket at Carry, Outside		12520 mm	12620 mm	12440 mm	12540 mm	12620 mm	12730 mm
Digging Depth:	0°	85 mm	100 mm	85 mm	100 mm	85 mm	100 mm
	10°	295 mm	335 mm	275 mm	310 mm	330 mm	370 mm
Static Tipping Load:	Straight	11670 kg	11795 kg	11735 kg	11850 kg	11595 kg	11700 kg
	40° Full Turn	10425 kg	10550 kg	10490 kg	10600 kg	10345 kg	10450 kg
Breakout Force		13180 kg	11700 kg	15140 kg	13210 kg	11280 kg	10180 kg
Operating Weight		13850 kg	13745 kg	13810 kg	13705 kg	14025 kg	13920 kg

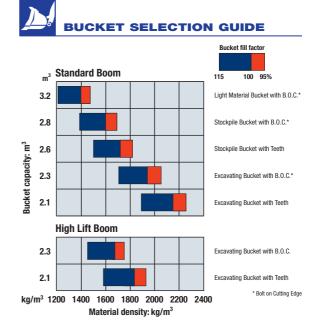
		High Lift Boom	
		Excavating Bucket	
		B.O.C.*2	Teeth
Bucket Capacity:	Heaped	2.3 m ³	2.1 m³
	Struck	2.0 m ³	1.8 m³
Bucket Width		2740 mm	2760 mm
Bucket Weight		1195 kg	1090 kg
Dumping Clearance, Max. H	eight and 45° Dump Angle ^{*1}	3595 mm	3485 mm
Reach at Max. Height and 4	5° Dump Angle ^{*1}	955 mm	1040 mm
Reach at 2130 mm Clearand	ce and 45° Dump Angle	2090 mm	2130 mm
Reach with Arm Horizontal	and Bucket Level	2785 mm	2925 mm
Operating Height (Fully Raised)		5775 mm	5805 mm
Overall Length		8005 mm	8145 mm
Loader Clearance Circle (Bucket at Carry, Outside Corr	ner of Bucket)	12975 mm	13090 mm
Digging Depth:	0°	130 mm	150 mm
	10°	315 mm	360 mm
Static Tipping Load: Straight		9390 kg	9540 kg
	40° Full Turn	8170 kg	8300 kg
Breakout Force		14200 kg	12400 kg
Operating Weight		14440 kg	14335 kg

 $^{^{\}star}1$ At the end of tooth or Bolt on Cutting Edge (B.O.C.).

All dimensions, weights, and performance values based on SAE J732c

and J742b standards.
Static tipping load and operating weight shown include lubricant, coolant, full fuel tank, ROPS cab, and operator. Machine stability and operating weight affected by counterweight, tire size, and other attachments. Apply the following weight changes to operating weight and static tipping

*2 Bolt on Cutting Edges





BUCKETS & ATTACHMENTS

■ Buckets

Туре	Feature Feature	Image
Stockpile Bucket	This bucket is used for loading stockpile products, such as crushed rock and construction materials.	
Excavating Bucket	This bucket is used for excavating and loading blasted rock on rock crushing job sites, or for excavating natural ground. It has a flat-blade, straight cutting edge, and provides superior rigidity and wear resistance.	Marrow Marrow
Loose/Light Material Bucket	This bucket is used for loading materials with comparatively light specific gravity. It is based on the stockpile bucket, with a lengthened cutting edge and width to give increased capacity.	

■ Cutting Edges and Teeth

Туре	Feature Feature	lma	age
Cutting Edges	This edge is made for use in loading loose sand and soil, or for loading stockpiled materials. It is bolted to the leading edge of stockpile buckets and may be detached and reversed. The cutting edges are manufactured from especially heat treated, high tension steel, and since they are reversible, both edges can be used. This effectively doubles their working life.	Bolt on Cutting Edges (B.O.C.)	
Teeth (Bolt on Type)	These teeth are suitable for loading or excavation of piles of earth or sand, blasted rock, and jobs in the field that involve digging into the side of slopes. The special heat treated, tensile strength steel alloy used in their production assures that they will wear and have a long service life.	No State of	
Teeth (Tip Type)	These teeth tips which are attached to an adapter that is welded or bolted to the bucket edge. This means that an interchangeable part, the tooth tip, absorbs most of the wear and protects the actual bucket edge. They give excellent performance when used to handle blasted rock, piles of earth and similarly heavy duty tasks.	Welded adapter	Bolt on adapter



WEIGHT / DIMENSIONS

Tires/Attachments	Change in Operating Weight	Change in Tipping Load Straight	Change in Tipping Load Full Turn	Width Over Tires	Ground Clearance	Change in Vertical Dimensions
20.5-25-12PR (L-3)	0 kg	0 kg	0 kg	2590 mm	425 mm	0 mm
20.5-25-12PR (L-2)	-210 kg	-165 kg	-165 kg	2590 mm	425 mm	0 mm
Install ROPS(ISO 3471) Canopy (Instead of Cab)	-150 kg	-150 kg	-140 kg			
Install Additional Counterweight	520 kg	1015 kg	870 kg			



STANDARD EQUIPMENT

ENGINE/POWER TRAIN:

- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D107E-1 diesel
- Engine shut-off system, electric
- Fuel pre-filter with water separator
- Service brakes, wet multiple-disc type
- Transmission (Hydrostatic with speed range select), automatic
- · Wet disc parking brake

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM:

- Alternator, 60 A
- Back-up alarm
- Batteries, 2 x 12 V/112 Ah
- Lights4 front, 2 rear
 - Back up
- Turn signal with hazard
 Starting motor, 24 V/5.5 kW

- HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:
- 2-spool valve for boom and bucket controls
- Hydraulic driven fan with reverse rotation
- Hydraulic oil cooler
- Lift cylinders and bucket cylinder

CAB:

- Air Conditioner
- Auto shift transmission with mode select system
- Cigarette lighter (24 V) and ashtray
- Front & rear window washer and wiper
- Main monitor panel with Equipment Management Monitoring System
- PPC hydraulic control, mono lever
- Rear heated glass (Electric)
- Rear under view mirror

- Rear view mirror for cab
- ROPS/FOPS (ISO 3471/ISO 3449) cab
- · Seat, suspension type with reclining
- Seat belt
- Steering wheel, tiltable
- Sun visor

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- · Boom kick-out
- Bucket positioner
- Counterweight
- Loader linkage with standard lift boom

OTHER EQUIPMENT:

- Radiator mask, lattice type
- Tires (20.5-25-12PR, L-3 tubeless)



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

ENGINE/POWER TRAIN:

- Additional fuel filter with water separator
- Engine pre-cleaner with extension
- Limited slip differential (Front & rear)
- Power train guard
- Wide core radiator

ELECTRICAL SYSTEM:

- 12 V outlet
- Batteries, large capacity
- Battery disconnect switch

HYDRAULIC SYSTEM:

- 3-spool valve
- Hydraulic driven fan with automatic reverse rotation
- Secondary steering (SAE)

CAB:

- AM/FM radio
- AM/FM stereo radio cassette
- Cool & heater box
- Deluxe suspension seat
- Floor mat
- ROPS (ISO 3471) canopy

WORK EQUIPMENT:

- Additional counterweight
- Bolt on Cutting Edges (B.O.C.)
- Bucket teeth (Bolt-on type)
- Bucket teeth (Tip type)
- High lift boom

OTHER EQUIPMENT:

- Electronically Controlled Suspension System
- Fire extinguisher
- Front fenders
- Ordinary spare parts
- Rear full fenders
- Rear view monitoring system
- Tool kit
- Vandalism protection kit

KOMATSU TOTAL SUPPORT





Komatsu Total Support

To keep your machine available and minimize operation cost when you need it, Komatsu Distributor is ready to provide a variety of supports before and after procuring the machine.

Fleet recommendation

Komatsu Distributor can study the customer's job site and provide the most optimum fleet recommendation with detailed information to meet all of your application needs when you are considering to buy new machines or replace the existing ones from Komatsu.

Product support

Komatsu Distributor gives the proactive support and secures the quality of the machinery that will be delivered.

Parts availability

Komatsu Distributor is available for emergency inquiry by the customers for genuine, quality guaranteed Komatsu parts.

Technical support

Komatsu product support service (Technical support) is designed to help customer. Komatsu Distributor offers a variety of effective services to show how much Komatsu is dedicated to the maintenance and support of Komatsu machine.

- Preventive Maintenance (PM) clinic
- Oil & Wear analysis program

Repair & maintenance service

Komatsu Distributor offers quality repair and maintenance service to the customer, utilizing and promoting Komatsu developed programs.

Komatsu Reman (Remanufactured) components

Komatsu Reman products are the result of the implementation of the Komatsu global policy which establishes and agrees to reduce the owning, operating and total Life Cycle Costs (LCC) to Komatsu's customer through high quality, prompt delivery and competitively priced in own remanufactured products (QDC).



https://home.komatsu/en/

Printed in Japan 201903 IP.As

KOMATSU®

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 143 kW 192 HP @ 2100 min-1 Net: 141 kW 189 HP @ 2100 min-1

BUCKET CAPACITY

2.7-4.0 m³

KOMATSU®

WA380z-6





Photos may include optional equipment.

WALK-AROUND

High Productivity & Low Fuel Consumption

- High performance SAA6D107E-1 engine
- Low fuel consumption
- Dual-mode engine power select system
- Automatic transmission with shift timing select system
- Variable displacement piston pump & CLSS

See pages 4 and 5.

Excellent Operator Environment

- Automatic transmission with ECMV
- Electronically controlled transmission lever
- Variable transmission cut-off system
- Tilt steering column

See pages 8 and 9.

- Fingertip control levers
- Pillar-less large ROPS/FOPS cab-integrated
- Easy entry/exit, rear-hinged doors



Harmony with Environment

- EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions certified
- Low fuel consumption

Increased Reliability

- Reliable Komatsu designed and manufactured components
- Sturdy main frame
- Maintenance-free, fully hydraulic, wet disc service and parking brakes
- Hydraulic hoses use flat face O-ring seals

See page 6.

- Cation electrodeposition process is used to apply primer paint
- Powder coating process is used to apply on main structure
- Sealed DT connectors for electrical connections

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 143 kW 192 HP @ 2100 min-1 Net: 141 kW 189 HP @ 2100 min-1

> BUCKET CAPACITY 2.7-4.0 m³



Easy Maintenance

 "EMMS" (Equipment Management Monitoring System)

Engine side doors open wide

See page 7.

HIGH PRODUCTIVITY AND LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION



High Performance SAA6D107E-1 Engine

Electronic Heavy Duty Common Rail fuel injection system provides optimum combustion of fuel.

This system also provides fast throttle response to match the machine's powerful tractive effort and fast hydraulic response.

Net: 141 kW 189 HP

Low Emission Engine

This engine is EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emissions certified, without sacrificing power or machine productivity.

Low Fuel Consumption

The fuel consumption is reduced greatly because of the low-noise, high-torque engine and the large-capacity torque converter with maximum efficiency in the low-speed range.

Dual-mode Engine Power Select System

This wheel loader offers two selectable operating modes— E and P. The operator can adjust the machine's performance with the selection switch.

 E Mode: This mode provides maximum fuel efficiency for most of general loading.

 P Mode: This mode provides maximum power output for hard digging operation or hill climb.



Dual mode engine power selection switch



The ECO indicator will help an operator to promote energy saving.

Automatic Transmission with Mode Select System

This operator controlled system allows the operator to select manual shifting or two levels of automatic shifting (low and high).

Auto L mode is for fuel saving operation with the gear shift timing set at lower speeds than Auto H mode. Therefore Auto L mode keeps the engine run in a relatively low rpms range



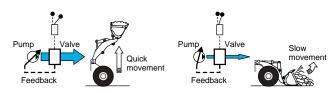
for fuel conservation while yielding adequate tractive force by depressing the accelerator pedal.

Shift mode selection switch

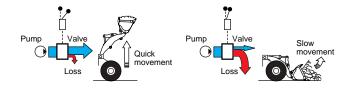
Variable Displacement Piston Pump & CLSS

New design variable displacement piston pump combined with the Closed-center Load Sensing System delivers hydraulic flow just as the job requires preventing wasting hydraulic pressure. Minimized waste loss contributes to better fuel economy.

 New Variable Displacement Piston Pump: The pump delivers only necessary amounts minimizing waste loss.



 Fixed Displacement Piston Pump: The pump delivers the maximum amount at any time and the unused flow is disposed.





Maximum Dumping Clearance and Reach

The long lift arms provide high dumping clearances and maximum dumping reach. The operator can even level loads on the body of a dump truck easily and efficiently.

Dumping Clearance: 2825 mm **Dumping Reach:** 1240 mm (3.1 m³ bucket with Teeth)



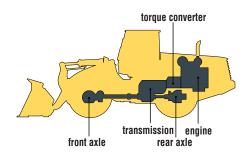
INCREASED RELIABILITY

Komatsu Components

Komatsu manufactures the engine, torque converter, transmission, hydraulic units, electric parts, and even each bolt on this

wheel loader.
Komatsu
loaders are
manufactured
with an
integrated
production
system under
a strict quality

control system.



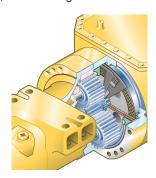
Wet Multi-disc Brakes and Fully Hydraulic Braking

System mean lower maintenance costs and higher reliability. Wet disc brakes are fully sealed. Contaminants are kept out, reducing wear and resulting maintenance. Brakes require no adjustments for wear, meaning even lower maintenance. The new parking brake is also an adjustment-free, wet multi-disc for high reliability and long life.

Added reliability is designed into the braking system by the use of two independent hydraulic circuits. Provides hydraulic backup should one of the circuits fail.

Fully hydraulic brakes mean no air system to bleed, or the condensation of water in the system that can lead to contamination, corrosion, and freezing.





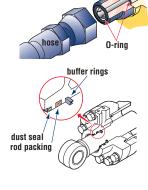
High-rigidity Frames and Loader Linkage

The front and rear frames and the loader linkage have got more torsional rigidity to secure resistance against stresses increased due to the use of a larger bucket.



Flat Face-to-face O-ring Seals

Flat face-to-face O-ring seals are used to securely seal hydraulic hose connections and to prevent oil leakage. In addition, buffer rings are installed to the head side of the all-hydraulic cylinders to lower the load on the rod seals and maximize the reliability.



Cation Electrodeposition Primer Paint/ Powder Coating Final Paint

Cation electrodeposition paint is applied as a primer paint and powder coating is applied as topcoat to the exterior metal sheet parts. This process results in a beautiful rust-free machine, even in the most severe environments. Some external parts are made of plastic providing long life and high impact resistance.

Sealed DT Connectors

Main harnesses and controller connectors are equipped

with sealed DT connectors providing high reliability, water resistance and dust resistance.



EASY MAINTENANCE



EMMS (Equipment Management Monitoring System)

Monitor is mounted in front of the operator for



A specially designed two-spoke steering wheel allows the operator to easily see the instrument panel.

Maintenance Control and Troubleshooting Functions

- Action code display function: If the loader has any troubles, the monitor displays action details on the character display at the center bottom of the monitor.
- Monitor function: Controller monitors engine oil level, pressure, coolant temperature, air cleaner clogging, etc.
 If controller finds abnormalities, all of these are displayed on LCD.
- Replacement time notice function: Monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on LCD when it reaches replacement intervals.
- Trouble data memory function: Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.

Engine Side Doors Open Wide

The operator can open and close each engine side door easily with the assistance of a gas spring to perform daily service checks from the ground.



Upper stop position



Lower stop position

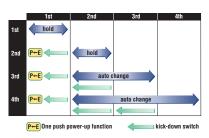
OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

Easy Operation

Automatic Transmission with ECMV

Automatic transmission with ECMV automatically selects the proper gear speed based on travel speed, engine speed, and other travel conditions. The ECMV (Electronically Controlled Modulation Valve) system engages the clutch smoothly to prevent lags and shocks when shifting. This system provides efficient machine operation and a comfortable ride.

Kick-down switch:
 Consider this
 valuable feature for
 added productivity.
 With the touch of
 a finger, the
 kick-down switch



automatically downshifts from second to first when beginning the digging cycle. It automatically upshifts from first to second when the direction control lever is placed in reverse. This results in increased rim pull for better bucket penetration and reduced cycle times for higher productivity.

- One push power-up function: The kick-down switch also functions as a power-up switch in first gear. The first time the kick-down switch is depressed it functions as a kick-down switch and gear speed is reduced. When the machine is in E operation mode and first gear, pressing the kick-down switch a second time changes the operation mode to P allowing increased power for heavy digging operation. The operation mode returns to E when machine gear speed changes or direction changes to reverse.
- Hold switch: Auto shift is selected and if the operator turns on this switch when the lever is at the 3rd or 4th gear speed position, the transmission is fixed to that gear speed.

Electronically Controlled Transmission Lever



Easy shifting and directional changes

with Komatsu two-lever electronic shifting. Change direction or shift gears with a touch of the fingers without removing the

shifting hand from the steering wheel. Solid state electronics and conveniently located direction and gear shift controls make this possible. Automatic shifts in ranges two through four keep production high and manual shifting at a minimum.

Variable Transmission Cut-off System

The operator can continuously adjust the transmission cut-off pressure desired for the left brake pedal using switch located on the right-side control panel. The operator can improve the working performance by setting the cut-off pressure properly depending on working condition.

- High cut-off pressure for digging operations.
- Low cut-off pressure for truck-loading operations.



1:Cut-off ON/OFF switch 2:Cut off adjustment switch 3:Boom control 4:Bucket control



Fingertip Work Equipment Control Levers with Large Size Arm Rest

New PPC control levers are used for the work equipment. The operator can easily operate the work equipment with fingertip control, reducing operator fatigue and increasing



controllability. The large size arm rest can be adjusted up or down to provide the operator with a variety of comfortable operating positions.

Tilt Steering Column

The operator can tilt the steering column to provide a comfortable working position.



Comfortable Operation

Pillar-less Large Cab



A wide pillar-less flat glass provides excellent front visibility. The wiper arm covers a large area to provide great visibility even on rainy days.

The cab area is the largest in its class providing maximum space for the operator.

Increased seat reclining and slide adjustment to backward by introducing front mounted air conditioner unit.

The large cab is mounted with Komatsu's unique ROPS/FOPS viscous mounts. The hydraulically driven fan, and hydraulic pumps are mounted with rubber cushions, and the cab sealing is improved to provide a quiet, low-vibration, dustproof with pressurizing, and comfortable operating environment.

Rear-hinged Full Open Cab Doors

The cab door hinges are installed to the rear side of the cab providing a large opening angle for the operator to enter and

exit. The steps are designed like a staircase, so that the operator can get on and off the cab easily.



SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Type	
•	
•	
Piston displacement	
Governor	All-speed, electronic
Horsepower	
SAE J1995	
ISO 9249/SAE J1349*	Net 141 kW 189 HP
Rated rpm	
Fan drive method for radiator coo	lingHydraulic
Fuel system	
Lubrication system:	
Filter	Gear pump, force-lubrication Full-flow type .Dry type with double elements and
7. Glodiloi III. III. III. III. III. III. III. II	dust evacuator, plus dust indicator

*Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 130 kW 175 HP.



TRANSMISSION

lorque converter:	
Type	3-element, 1-stage, 1-phase
Transmission:	

TypeAutomatic full-powershift, countershaft type Travel speed: km/h

Measured with 23.5-25 tires

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th
Forward	6.6	11.5	20.2	34.0
Reverse	7.1	12.3	21.5	35.5

Measured with 20.5-25 tires

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th
Forward	6.0	10.6	18.6	31.1
Reverse	6.5	11.3	19.9	33.0



AXLES AND FINAL DRIVES

Drive system	Four-wheel drive
Front	Fixed, semi-floating
Rear	.Center-pin support, semi-floating,
	26° total oscillation
Reduction gear	Spiral bevel gear
Differential gear	
Final reduction gear	Planetary gear, single reduction



Service brakes	
wet dis	c brakes actuate on four wheels
Parking brake	
Emergency brake	Parking brake is commonly used



STEERING SYSTEM

Type	.Articulated type	e, full-hydraulic pow	er steering
Steering angle		each direction (40°	end stop)
Minimum turning radius	s at		
the center of outside tir	е		.6320 mm



HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Steering system:
Hydraulic pump
Capacity
Relief valve setting
Hydraulic cylinders:
Type
Number of cylinders
Bore x stroke
Loader control:
Hydraulic pump
Capacity
Relief valve setting
Hydraulic cylinders:
Type
Number of cylinders—bore x stroke:
Lift cylinder
Bucket cylinder1- 150 mm x 535 mr
Control valve
Control positions:
Boom
BucketTilt-back, hold, and dum
Hydraulic cycle time (rated load in bucket)
Raise
Dump
Lower (Empty)



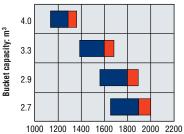
SERVICE REFILL CAPACITIES

Cooling system	29.1 L
Fuel tank	300 L
Engine	23 L
Hydraulic system	139 L
Axle (each front and rear)	40 L
Torque converter and transmission	38 L



BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE





Material density: kg/m³

Light Material Bucket with BOC (Scooping and loading of light material)

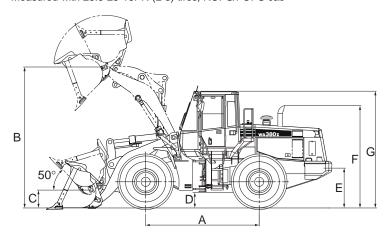
General Purpose Bucket with BOC (Loading and excavating of soil, sand and variety of other commonly handled material)

Excavating Bucket with BOC Excavating Bucket with Teeth and Segment Edge (Loading and excavating of crushed or blasted rock)

Excavating Bucket with Teeth (Loading and excavating of blasted rock)



Measured with 23.5-25-16PR (L-3) tires, ROPS/FOPS cab



	Tread	2160 mm
	Width over tires	2780 mm
Α	Wheelbase	3300 mm
В	Hinge pin height, max. height	4095 mm
С	Hinge pin height, carry position	520 mm
D	Ground clearance	455 mm
Е	Hitch height	1150 mm
F	Overall height, top of the stack	2975 mm
G	Overall height, ROPS cab	3390 mm

	General Purpose Buckets		ı	Excavating Buckets		
	Bolt-on Cutting Edges	Teeth	Bolt-on Cutting Edges	Teeth and Segments	Teeth	Bolt-on Cutting Edges
Bucket capacity: heaped	3.3 m³	3.1 m³	2.9 m³	2.9 m³	2.7 m³	4.0 m³
struck	2.9 m³	2.7 m³	2.4 m³	2.4 m³	2.3 m³	3.4 m³
Bucket width	2905 mm	2925 mm	2905 mm	2925 mm	2925 mm	2905 mm
Bucket weight	1620 kg	1540 kg	1720 kg	1765 kg	1645 kg	1835 kg
Dumping clearance, max. height and 45° dump angle*	2950 mm	2825 mm	3025 mm	2905 mm	2905 mm	2855 mm
Reach at max. height and 45° dump angle*	1150 mm	1240 mm	1045 mm	1140 mm	1140 mm	1220 mm
Reach at 2130 mm clearance and 45° dump angle	1730 mm	1765 mm	1675 mm	1715 mm	1715 mm	1755 mm
Reach with arm horizontal and bucket level	2585 mm	2745 mm	2445 mm	2615 mm	2615 mm	2710 mm
Operating height (fully raised)	5600 mm	5600 mm	5485 mm	5485 mm	5485 mm	5735 mm
Overall length	8140 mm	8295 mm	8000 mm	8155 mm	8155 mm	8265 mm
Loader clearance circle (bucket at carry, outside corner of bucket)	14420 mm	14520 mm	14350 mm	14450 mm	14450 mm	14480 mm
Digging depth: 0°	60 mm	75 mm	60 mm	75 mm	75 mm	60 mm
10°	290 mm	335 mm	270 mm	315 mm	315 mm	315 mm
Static tipping load: straight	14415 kg	14560 kg	14360 kg	14335 kg	14485 kg	14075 kg
40° full turn	12470 kg	12610 kg	12410 kg	12380 kg	12530 kg	12140 kg
Breakout force	158 kN 16100 kg	170 kN 17300 kg	176 kN 18000 kg	183 kN 18700 kg	191 kN 19500 kg	144 kN 14700 kg
Operating weight	17200 kg	17130 kg	17300 kg	17350 kg	17230 kg	17420 kg

^{*} At the end of tooth or B.O.C.

Static tipping load and operating weight shown include lubricant, coolant, full fuel tank, ROPS cab, and operator. Machine stability and operating weight affected by counterweight, tire size, and other attachments.

Apply the following weight changes to operating weight and static tipping load.

All dimensions, weights, and performance values based on SAE J732c and J742b standards.

Tires or attachments	Operating weight	Tipping load straight	Tipping load full turn	Width over tires	Ground clearance	Change in vertical dimensions
	kg	kg	kg	mm	mm	mm
23.5-25-16PR(L-3)	0	0	0	2780	455	0
20.5-25-16PR(L-3)	-970	-770	-680	2695	390	-65
Install additional	+340	±900	±755			

S		EQUIPMENT
	STANDARD	EQUIPMENT

- 2-spool valve for boom and bucket controls
- Air conditioner
- Alternator, 60 A
- Auto shift transmission with mode select system
- Back-up alarm
- Back-up lamp
- Batteries, 2 x 12 V/136 Ah
- Boom kick-out
- Bucket positioner
- Counterweight
- Directional signal

- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D107E-1 diesel
- Engine shut-off system, electric
- Floor mat
- Front fender
- Fuel prefilter with water separator
- Hydraulic-driven fan
- Lift cylinders and bucket cylinder
- Loader linkage with standard lift boom
- Main monitor panel with EMMS (Equipment Management Monitoring System)
- PPC fingertip control, two levers
- Radiator mask

- Rear view mirror
- Rear window washer and wiper
- ROPS/FOPS cab
- Seat, suspension type with reclining
- Seat belt
- Service brakes, wet disc type
- Starting motor, 5.5 kW/24 V
- Steering wheel, tiltable
- Sun visor
- Tires (23.5-25-16PR, L-3 tubeless) and rims
- Transmission, 4 forward and 4 reverse
- Water separator



- 3-spool valve
- Additional counterweight
- AM/FM radio
- Batteries, 2 x 12V/140 Ah
- Bucket teeth (bolt-on type)
- Bucket teeth (tip type)
- Counterweight for log

- Cutting edge (bolt-on type)
- Deluxe suspension seat
- Emergency steering (SAE)
- Engine pre-cleaner with extension
- High lift boom
- Limited slip differential (F&R)
- Log grapple

- Mud guard
- Ordinary spare parts
- Power train guard
- Rear under view mirror
- Tool kit
- Vandalism protection kit

www.Komatsu.com

Printed in Japan 201208 IP.SIN





Tires or attachments		ating ight	Tippin stra		Tippin full	g load turn	Wi over		Gro clear		Cha in ve dimer	rtical
	kg	lb	kg	lb	kg	lb	mm	ft in	mm	ft in	mm	ft in
23.5-25-20PR(L-3)	-305	-672	-240	-529	-210	-463	2920	9'7"	460	1'6"	-65	-3"
23.5-25-20PR(L-2)	-615	-1,355	-480	-1,058	-420	-926	2920	9'7"	460	1'6"	-65	-3"
26.5-25-16PR(L-3)	0	0	0	0	0	0	3010	9'11"	525	1'9"	0	0
26.5-25-20PR(L-4)	+425	+937	+330	+728	+290	+639	3010	9'11"	525	1'9"	0	0
Install additional counterweight	+400	+880	+1070	+2,358	+930	+2,050						

-O.	54

STANDARD EQUIPMENT

- 2-spool valve for boom and bucket controls
- Alternator, 50 A
- · Auto shift transmission with mode select system
- Back-up alarm
- Back-up lamp
- Batteries, 136 Ah/12 V x 2
- Counterweight
- Directional signal
- Engine, Komatsu SAA6D125E-5 diesel

- Engine shut-off system, electric
- Hard water area arrangement (corrosion resister)
- Hydraulic-driven fan with reverse rotation
- · Lift cylinders and bucket cylinder
- Main monitor panel with EMMS (Equipment Management
- Monitoring System) PPC fingertip control, two levers
- · Radiator mask, lattice type
- Rearview mirror for cab

- · Rear window washer and wiper
- ROPS/FOPS cab
- Seat belt
- · Seat, suspension type with reclining
- Service brakes, wet disc type
- Starting motor, 7.5 kW/24 V
- Steering wheel, tiltable, telescopic
- Sun visor
- Tires (26.5-25-16PR tubeless) and rims
- Transmission, 4 forward and 4 reverse



OPTIONAL EQUIPMENT

- 12V converter
- 3-spool valve
- · Additional counterweight
- Air conditioner AM/FM radio
- AM/FM stereo radio cassette
- Batteries, 140 Ah/12V x 2
- Bucket teeth (bolt-on type)
- Bucket teeth (tip type)
- Cutting edge (bolt-on type)

- ECSS (Electronically Controlled Suspension System)
- Emergency steering (SAE)
- Engine pre-cleaner with extension
- Fire extinguisher
- Floor mat
- Front fender
- High lift boom
- Joystick steering
- · Load meter, new type

- Lock-up clutch torque converter
- Ordinary spare parts
- Power train guard
- Seat, air suspension with automatic weight adjustment
- Seament edges
- Tool kit
- Vandalism protection kit
- Limited slip differential (F&R)

www.Komatsu.com

Printed in Japan 200806 IP.SIN (10)



Materials and specifications are subject to change without notice KOMAT'SU is a trademark of Komatsu Ltd. Japan



Gross: 204 kW 273 HP @ 2000 rpm Net: 203 kW 272 HP @ 2000 rpm

BUCKET CAPACITY

3.6-5.2 m³ 4.7-6.8 yd³

ecot3

KOMATSU®

WA470-6





Photo may include optional equipment.

WALK-AROUND

- Automatic transmission with ECMV
- Electronic controlled transmission lever
- Variable transmission cut-off system
- Telescopic / tilt steering column
- Fingertip control levers
- Dual-mode engine power select system

& Low Fuel Consumption

High Productivity

manufactured components Sturdy main frame

- Maintenance-free, fully hydraulic. **Excellent Operator Environment** wet disc service and parking brakes
 - Hydraulic hoses use flat face O-ring seals

Reliable Komatsu designed and

Increased Reliability

See page 6.

- Cathion electrodeposition process is used to apply primer paint
- Powder coating process is used to apply main structure paint
- Sealed DT connectors for electrical connections

HORSEPOWER

Gross: 204 kW 273 HP @ 2000 rpm Net: 203 kW 272 HP @ 2000 rpm

> **BUCKET CAPACITY** 3.6-5.2 m3 4.7-6.8 yd3



Photo may include optional equipment.

Harmony with Environment

- Meets EPA Tier 3 and EU Stage 3A emission regulations
- Low exterior noise
- Low fuel consumption

Easy Maintenance

- "EMMS" (Equipment Management Monitoring System) See page 7.
- Easy access, gull-wing type engine side doors
- Automatic Reversible Fan (option)

2

HIGH PRODUCTIVITY AND LOW FUEL CONSUMPTION



High Performance SAA6D125E-5 Engine

Electronic Heavy Duty Common Rail fuel injection system provides optimum combustion of fuel.

This system also provides fast throttle response to match the machine's powerful tractive effort and fast hydraulic response.

Net: 203 kW 272 HP

Low Emission Engine

This engine meets EPA Tier 3 emission regulations and EU Stage 3A emission regulations, without sacrificing power or machine productivity.

Low Fuel Consumption

The fuel consumption is reduced greatly because of the low-noise, high-torque engine and the large-capacity torque converter with maximum efficiency in the low-speed range.

Dual-Mode Engine Power Select System

This wheel loader offers two selectable operating modes— E and P. The operator can adjust the machine's performance with the selection switch.

 E Mode: This mode provides maximum fuel efficiency for general loading.

 P Mode: This mode provides maximum power output for hard digging operation or hill climb.



Dual mode engine power selection switch



The eco indicator will help an operator to promote energy saving.

Large-capacity torque converter

Newly designed drive train has a large-capacity torque converter for optimal efficiency. The WA470-6 has plenty of acceleration without the need for full throttle and it can achieve high travel speeds, even on grades or steep ramps leading to feed hoppers. This significantly assists productivity and also delivers great value for load-and-carry operations.

Automatic Transmission with Mode Select System

This operator controlled system allows the operator to select manual shifting or two levels of automatic shifting (low, and high). Auto L mode is for fuel saving operation with the gear shift timing set at lower speeds than Auto H mode.



Shift mode selection switch

Therefore Auto L mode keeps the engine in a relatively low rpm range for fuel conservation while yielding adequate tractive force by depressing the accelerator pedal.

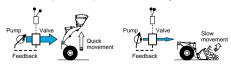
Lock-up Torque Converter (option)

The Komatsu designed lock-up torque converter provides increased production efficiency, reduced cycle times and optimum fuel savings in load & carry or hill-climb operations. The operator can engage the system from 2nd to 4th gear. This optional feature allows the operator to activate the system on/off with a switch located on the right-side control panel.

Variable displacement piston pump & CLSS

New design variable displacement piston pump combined with the Closed-center Load Sensing System delivers hydraulic flow just as the job requires preventing wasted hydraulic pressure. Minimized waste loss contributes to better fuel economy.

 New Variable Displacement Piston Pump: The pump delivers only necessary amounts minimizing waste loss.



 Fixed Displacement Piston Pump: The pump delivers the maximum amount at any time and the unused flow is disposed.





Maximum Dumping Clearance and Reach

The long lift arms provide high dumping clearances and maximum dumping reach. The operator can even level loads on the body of a dump truck easily and efficiently.

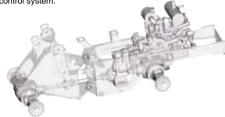
Dumping Clearance: 3185 mm 10'5" Dumping Reach: 1235 mm 4'1" (4.2 m³ 5.5 yd³ bucket with B.O.C.)



INCREASED RELIABILITY

Komatsu Components

Komatsu manufactures the engine, torque converter, transmission, hydraulic units, electric parts, on this wheel loader. Komatsu loaders are manufactured with an integrated production system under a strict quality control system.



Wet multi-disc brakes and fully hydraulic braking

system mean lower maintenance costs and higher reliability. Wet disc brakes are fully sealed. Contaminants are kept out, reducing wear and maintenance. Brakes require no adjustments for wear, meaning even lower maintenance. The new parking brake is also an adjustment-free, wet multi-disc for high reliability and long life.

Added reliability is designed into the braking system by the use of two independent hydraulic circuits. Provides hydraulic backup should one of the circuits fail.

Fully hydraulic brakes mean no air system to bleed, or the condensation of water in the system that can lead to contamination, corrosion, and freezing.





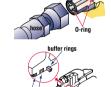
High-rigidity Frames and Loader Linkage

The front and rear frames and the loader linkage have more torsional rigidity to secure resistance against increased stress due to the use of a larger bucket.

Frame and loader linkage are designed to accommodate actual working loads, and simulated computer testing proves its strength.

Flat Face-to-Face O-Ring Seals

Flat face-to-face O-ring seals are used to securely seal hydraulic hose connections and to prevent oil leakage. In addition, buffer rings are installed to the head side of the all-hydraulic cylinders to lower the load on the rod seals and maximize the reliability.



Cathion Electrodeposition Primer Paint/ Powder Coating Final Paint

Cathion electrodeposition paint is applied as a primer paint and powder coating is applied as topcoat to the exterior sheet metal parts. This process results in a beautiful rust-free machine, even in the most severe environments. Some external parts are made of plastic providing long life and high impact resistance.

Sealed DT Connectors

Main harnesses and controller connectors are equipped with sealed DT connectors providing high reliability, water resistance and dust resistance.

EASY MAINTENANCE



EMMS (Equipment Management Monitoring System)

Monitor is mounted in front of the operator for easy



viewing, allowing the operator to easily check gauges and warning lights.

A specially designed two-spoke steering wheel allows the operator to easily see the instrument panel.

Maintenance Control

and Troubleshooting Functions

- Action code display function: If abnormality occurs, the monitor displays action details on the character display at the bottom center of the monitor.
- Monitor function: Controller monitors engine oil level, pressure, coolant temperature, air cleaner clogging, etc.
 If controller finds abnormalities, the error is displayed on LCD.
- Replacement time notice function: Monitor informs replacement time of oil and filters on LCD when replacement intervals are reached.
- Trouble data memory function: Monitor stores abnormalities for effective troubleshooting.

Gull-wing Type Engine Side Doors Open Wide

The operator can open and close each gull-wing type engine side door easily with

the assistance of a gas spring to perform daily service checks from the ground.



Ease of Radiator Cleaning

If the machine is operating in adverse conditions, the operator can reverse the hydraulic cooling fan from inside the cab by turning on a switch on the control panel.

Automatic Reversible Fan (option)

The engine fan is driven hydraulically. It can be operated in reverse automatically. When switch is automatic position. The fan revolves in reverse for 2minutes every 2 hours intermittently. (Default setting)



B: Manual Reverse Mode
A: Normal rotation Mode
C: Auto Reverse Mode

7

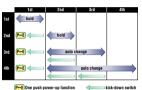
OPERATOR ENVIRONMENT

Easy Operation

Automatic Transmission with ECMV

Automatic transmission with ECMV automatically selects the proper gear speed based on travel speed, engine speed, and other travel conditions. The ECMV (Electronically Controlled Modulation Valve) system engages the clutch smoothly to prevent lags and shocks when shifting. This system provides efficient machine operation and a comfortable ride.

Kick-down switch:
 Consider this
 valuable feature for
 added productivity.
 With the touch of
 a finger, the
 kick-down switch



automatically downshifts from second to first when beginning the digging cycle. It automatically upshifts from first to second when the direction control lever is placed in reverse. This results in increased rim pull for better bucket penetration and reduced cycle times for higher productivity.

- One push power-up function: The kick-down switch also functions as a power-up switch in first gear. The first time the kick-down switch is depressed it functions as a kick-down switch and gear speed is reduced. When the machine is in E operation mode and first gear, pressing the kick-down switch a second time changes the operation mode to P allowing increased power for heavy digging operation. The operation mode returns to E when machine gear speed changes or direction changes to reverse.
- Hold switch: Auto shift is selected and if the operator turns on this switch when the lever is at the 3rd or 4th gear speed position, the transmission is fixed to that gear speed.

Electronically Controlled Transmission Lever



Easy shifting and directional changes

with Komatsu two-lever electronic shifting. Change direction or shift gears with a touch of the fingers without removing the

shifting hand from the steering wheel. Solid state electronics and conveniently located direction and gear shift controls make this possible. Automatic shifts in ranges two through four keep production high and manual shifting at a minimum.

Variable Transmission Cut-off System

The operator can continuously adjust the transmission cut-off pressure desired for the left brake pedal using switch located on the right-side control panel. The operator can improve the working performance by setting the cut-off pressure properly depending on working condition.

- · High cut-off pressure for digging operations.
- Low cut-off pressure for truck-loading operations.



1:Cut-off ON/OFF switch 2:Cut-off adjustment switch 3:Fan reverse ON/OFF switch 4:Boom control 5:Bucket control

Fingertip Work Equipment Control levers with Large size arm rest

New PPC control levers are used for the work equipment. The operator can easily operate the work equipment with fingertip control, reducing operator fatigue and increasing controllability. The PPC control lever column can be slid



forward or rearward and the large size arm rest can be adjusted up or down to provide the operator with a variety of comfortable operating positions.

Telescopic/Tilt Steering Column

The operator can tilt and telescope the steering column to provide a comfortable working position.

Comfortable Operation

Low-noise Design

Noise at operator's ear noise level : 72 dB(A) Dynamic noise level (outside): 112 dB(A)

The large cab is mounted with Komatsu's unique ROPS/FOPS viscous mounts. The low-noise engine, hydraulically driven fan.

and hydraulic pumps are mounted with rubber cushions, and the cab sealing is improved to provide a quiet, low-vibration, dustproof with pressurizing, and comfortable operating environment. Also, exterior noise is lowest



Pillar-less Large Cab

A wide pillar-less flat glass provides excellent front visibility. The wiper arm covers a large area to provide great visibility even on rainy days.

The cab area is the

largest in its class providing maximum space for the operator. Increased seat slide adjustment to backward by introducing front mounted air conditioner unit.

Rear-hinged Full Open Cab Door

The cab door hinges are installed to the rear side of the cab providing a large opening angle for the operator to enter and exit. The steps are designed like a staircase, so that the operator can get on and off the cab easily.





WA470-6

SPECIFICATIONS



ENGINE

Model	
AspirationTurbocharged, aftercooled, co	ooled EGR
Number of cylinders	6
Bore x stroke	
Piston displacement	Itr 674 in ³
Governor	electronic
Horsepower	
SAE J1995	W 273 HP
ISO 9249/SAE J1349* Net 203 k	W 272 HP
Rated rpm	.2000 rpm
Fan drive method for radiator cooling	.Hydraulic
Fuel system	ct injection
Lubrication system:	
MethodGear pump, force- FilterFu	
Air cleaner	

*Net horsepower at the maximum speed of radiator cooling fan is 191 kW 256 HP



TRANSMISSION

TR/	ANSMISS	ION		
Torque conver	ter:			
Type		3-elemer	nt, single-stage	, single-phase
Transmission:				
Туре		Full	-powershift, co	ontershaft type
Travel speed:	km/h mph			
Measured w	ith 23.5-25 tire	s		
	1st	2nd	3rd	4th

	1st	2nd 3rd		4th	
Forward	7.0 4.3	12.2 7.6	21.3 13.2	33.7 20.9	
Reverse	7.3 4.5	12.6 7.8	21.9 13.6	34.7 21.6	

Measured with 26.5-25 tires

	1st	2nd	3rd	4th	
Forward	7.6 4.7	13.1 8.1	22.9 14.2	36.2 22.5	
Reverse	7.9 4.9	13.5 8.4	23.6 14.7	37.3 23.2	



AXLES AND FINAL DRIVES

Drive system	
Rear	Center-pin support, semi-floating,
	26° total oscillation
Reduction gear	Spiral bevel gear
Differential gear	
Final reduction gear	Planetary gear, single reduction



Service brakes	ed,
wet disc brakes actuate on four whee	els
Parking brake	ke
Emergency brake Parking brake is commonly us	ed

STEERING SYSTEM

Туре	Articulated type, full-hydraulic power steering
Steering angle	
Minimum turning radio	us at
the center of outside t	ire 6630 mm 21'9"



HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Steering system:
Hydraulic pump
Capacity
Relief valve setting
Hydraulic cylinders:
Type
Number of cylinders
Bore x stroke
Loader control:
Hydraulic pump
Capacity
Relief valve setting
Hydraulic cylinders:
Type
Number of cylinders—bore x stroke:
Boom cylinder
Bucket cylinder
Control valve
Control positions:
Boom
BucketTilt-back, hold, and dump
Hydraulic cycle time (rated load in bucket)
Raise
Dump
Lower (Empty)
Lower (Linpsy)

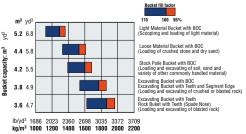


SERVICE REFILL CAPACITIES

Cooling system
Fuel tank
Engine
Hydraulic system
Axle front
rear
Forgue converter and transmission



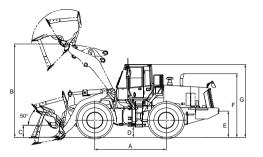
BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE



Material density: kg/m³ lb/yd³



Measured with 26.5-25-16PR (L3) tires



	Tread	2300 mm	7'7"
	Width over tires	3010 mm	9'11"
Α	Wheelbase	3450 mm	11'4"
В	Hinge pin height, max. height	4360 mm	14'4"
С	Hinge pin height, carry position	585 mm	1'11"
D	Ground clearance	525 mm	1'9"
Е	Hitch height	1240 mm	4'1"
F	Overall height, top of the stack	3080 mm	10'1"
G	Overall height, ROPS cab	3500 mm	11'6"

	General Purpose Buckets					Rock Bucket	Loose Material	Light Material
	Stock	pile	Excavating			(Spade nose)	Bucket	Bucket
	Bolt-on Cutting edges	Teeth	Bolt-on Cutting edges	Teeth and Segments	Teeth	Teeth	Bolt-on Cutting edges	Bolt-on Cutting edges
Bucket capacity: heaped	4.2 m³	3.9 m³	3.8 m³	3.8 m³	3.6 m³	3.6 m³	4.4 m³	5.2 m
	5.5 yd³	5.1 yd³	5.0 yd³	5.0 yd³	4.7 yd³	4.7 yd³	5.8 yd³	6.8 yd
struck	3.5 m³	3.3 m³	3.2 m³	3.2 m³	3.1 m³	3.1 m³	3.9 m³	4.5 m
	4.6 yd³	4.3 yd³	4.2 yd³	4.2 yd³	4.1 yd³	4.1 yd³	5.1 yd³	5.9 yd
Bucket width	3170 mm	3190 mm	3170 mm	3190 mm	3190 mm	3170 mm	3170 mm	3170 mm
	10'5"	10'6"	10'5"	10'6"	10'6"	10'5"	10'5"	10'5
Bucket weight	2050 kg	1970 kg	2150 kg	2200 kg	2070 kg	2165 kg	2110 kg	2185 kg
	4,519 lb	4,343 lb	4,740 lb	4,850 lb	4,564 lb	4,773 lb	4,652 lb	4,817 lb
Dumping clearance, max. height and 45° dump angle*	3185 mm	3060 mm	3235 mm	3110 mm	3110 mm	2975 mm	3055 mm	3035 mm
	10'5"	10'0"	10'7"	10'2"	10'2"	9'9"	10'0"	9'11
Reach at max. height and 45° dump angle*	1235 mm	1335 mm	1185 mm	1285 mm	1285 mm	1435 mm	1365 mm	1385 mm
	4'1"	4'5"	3'11"	4'3"	4'3"	4'8"	4'6"	4'7
Reach at 2130 mm (7') clearance and 45° dump angle	1935 mm	1975 mm	1905 mm	1950 mm	1950 mm	2035 mm	2010 mm	2020 mn
	6'4"	6'6"	6'3"	6'5"	6'5"	6'8"	6'7"	6'8
Reach with arm horizontal and bucket level	2755 mm	2910 mm	2685 mm	2840 mm	2840 mm	3040 mm	2940 mm	2965 mn
	9'0"	9'7"	8'10"	9'4"	9'4"	10'0"	9'8"	9'9
Operating height (fully raised)	5960 mm	5960 mm	5875 mm	5875 mm	5875 mm	5875 mm	5960 mm	6185 mn
	19'7"	19'7"	19'3"	19'3"	19'3"	19'3"	19'7"	20'4
Overall length	8825 mm	8980 mm	8755 mm	8910 mm	8910 mm	9210 mm	9010 mm	9035 mn
	28'11"	29'6"	28'9"	29'3"	29'3"	29'11"	29'7"	29'8
Loader clearance circle (35°) (bucket at carry, outside corner of bucket)	15280 mm 50'2"	15380 mm 50'6"	15240 mm 50'0"	15340 mm 50'4"	15340 mm 50'4"	15280 mm 50'2"	15370 mm 50'5"	15380 mn 50'6
Digging depth: 0°	80 mm	100 mm	80 mm	100 mm	100 mm	85 mm	80 mm	80 mn
	3.1"	3.9"	3.1"	3.9"	3.9"	3.3"	3.1"	3.1
10°	315 mm	360 mm	305 mm	350 mm	350 mm	370 mm	345 mm	350 mm
	1'0"	1'2"	1'0"	1'2"	1'2"	1'3"	1'2"	1'2
Static tipping load: straight	18295 kg	18370 kg	18205 kg	18160 kg	18275 kg	18190 kg	18240 kg	18175 k g
	40,330 lb	40,500 lb	40,130 lb	40,040 lb	40,290 lb	40,100 lb	40,210 lb	40,070 ll
40° full turn	15720 kg 34,660 lb	15795 kg 34,820 lb	15630 kg 34,460 lb	15585 kg 34,360 lb	15705 kg 34,620 lb	15615 kg 34,420 lb	15665 kg 34,530 lb	15600 kg 34,390 ll
Breakout force	192 kN	207 kN	203 kN	209 kN	220 kN	190 kN	168 kN	165 kN
	19600 kgf	21120 kgf	20710 kgf	21330 kgf	22450 kgf	19390 kgf	17140 kgf	16840 kg
	43,160 lb	46,560 lb	45,660 lb	47,020 lb	49,490 lb	42,750 lb	37,790 lb	37,130 lt
Operating weight	22960 kg 50,620 lb	22880 kg 50,440 lb	23060 kg 50,840 lb	23110 kg 50,950 lb	22980 kg 50,660 lb	23075 kg 50,870 lb	23020 kg 50,750 lb	23095 kg 50,910 lb

^{*} At the end of tooth or B.O.C.

Static tipping load and operating weight shown include lubricant, coolant, full fuel tank, ROPS cab, and operator. Machine stability and operating weight affected by counterweight, tire size, and other attachments.

Apply the following weight changes to operating weight and static tipping load.

All dimensions, weights, and performance values based on SAE J732c and J742b standards.